

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations  
and is not a part of the Official Record

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,  
please do not report the images to the  
Image Problem Mailbox.**



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b><br><b>A61K 31/535, 31/44, 31/415, C07D</b><br><b>413/00, 401/00, 417/00, 419/00, 233/66</b>  | <b>A1</b>   | <b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 99/17777</b><br><b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 15 April 1999 (15.04.99) |
| <b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US98/21063<br><b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 7 October 1998 (07.10.98)<br><b>(30) Priority Data:</b><br>60/062.660 8 October 1997 (08.10.97) US<br><b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).<br><b>(72) Inventors; and</b><br><b>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):</b> DESOLMS, S., Jane [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). HUTCHINSON, John, H. [CA/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). SHAW, Anthony, W. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). GRAHAM, Samuel, L. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). CICCARONE, Terrence, M. [US/US]; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US).<br><b>(74) Common Representative:</b> MERCK & CO., INC.; 126 East Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). | <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CN, CU, CZ, EE, GD, GE, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KG, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LT, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, RU, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, US, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).<br><br><b>Published</b><br><i>With international search report.</i> |  |
| <b>(54) Title:</b> INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE<br><br><b>(57) Abstract</b><br><br>The present invention is directed to compounds which inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase (FTase) and the farnesylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The invention is further directed to chemotherapeutic compositions containing the compounds of this invention and methods for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras.  |   |  |

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

|    |                          |    |                     |    |                       |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------|----|-----------------------|----|--------------------------|
| AL | Albania                  | ES | Spain               | LS | Lesotho               | SI | Slovenia                 |
| AM | Armenia                  | FI | Finland             | LT | Lithuania             | SK | Slovakia                 |
| AT | Austria                  | FR | France              | LU | Luxembourg            | SN | Senegal                  |
| AU | Australia                | GA | Gabon               | LV | Latvia                | SZ | Swaziland                |
| AZ | Azerbaijan               | GB | United Kingdom      | MC | Monaco                | TD | Chad                     |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina   | GE | Georgia             | MD | Republic of Moldova   | TG | Togo                     |
| BB | Barbados                 | GH | Ghana               | MG | Madagascar            | TJ | Tajikistan               |
| BE | Belgium                  | GN | Guinea              | MK | The former Yugoslav   | TM | Turkmenistan             |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | GR | Greece              |    | Republic of Macedonia | TR | Turkey                   |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | HU | Hungary             | ML | Mali                  | TT | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| BJ | Benin                    | IE | Ireland             | MN | Mongolia              | UA | Ukraine                  |
| BR | Brazil                   | IL | Israel              | MR | Mauritania            | UG | Uganda                   |
| BY | Belarus                  | IS | Iceland             | MW | Malawi                | US | United States of America |
| CA | Canada                   | IT | Italy               | MX | Mexico                | UZ | Uzbekistan               |
| CF | Central African Republic | JP | Japan               | NE | Niger                 | VN | Viet Nam                 |
| CG | Congo                    | KE | Kenya               | NL | Netherlands           | YU | Yugoslavia               |
| CH | Switzerland              | KG | Kyrgyzstan          | NO | Norway                | ZW | Zimbabwe                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | KP | Democratic People's | NZ | New Zealand           |    |                          |
| CM | Cameroon                 |    | Republic of Korea   | PL | Poland                |    |                          |
| CN | China                    | KR | Republic of Korea   | PT | Portugal              |    |                          |
| CU | Cuba                     | KZ | Kazakstan           | RO | Romania               |    |                          |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | LC | Saint Lucia         | RU | Russian Federation    |    |                          |
| DE | Germany                  | LI | Liechtenstein       | SD | Sudan                 |    |                          |
| DK | Denmark                  | LK | Sri Lanka           | SE | Sweden                |    |                          |
| EE | Estonia                  | LR | Liberia             | SG | Singapore             |    |                          |

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

## INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE

DOMESTIC PRIORITY CLAIM

- 5                   The priority of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/062,660, filed October 8, 1997, is claimed.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

- 10                   The Ras proteins (Ha-Ras, Ki4a-Ras, Ki4b-Ras and N-Ras) are part of a signaling pathway that links cell surface growth factor receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Biological and biochemical studies of Ras action indicate that Ras functions like a G-regulatory protein. In the inactive state, Ras is bound to GDP. Upon growth factor receptor activation Ras is induced to exchange GDP for
- 15                   GTP and undergoes a conformational change. The GTP-bound form of Ras propagates the growth stimulatory signal until the signal is terminated by the intrinsic GTPase activity of Ras, which returns the protein to its inactive GDP bound form (D.R. Lowy and D.M. Willumsen, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 62:851-891 (1993)). Mutated *ras* genes (Ha-*ras*, Ki4a-*ras*, Ki4b-*ras* and N-*ras*) are found in many human cancers, including colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, and myeloid leukemias. The protein products of these genes are defective in their
- 20                   GTPase activity and constitutively transmit a growth stimulatory signal.

- Ras must be localized to the plasma membrane for both
- 25                   normal and oncogenic functions. At least 3 post-translational modifications are involved with Ras membrane localization, and all 3 modifications occur at the C-terminus of Ras. The Ras C-terminus contains a sequence motif termed a "CAAX" or "Cys-Aaa<sup>1</sup>-Aaa<sup>2</sup>-Xaa" box (Cys is cysteine, Aaa is an aliphatic amino acid, the Xaa is any
- 30                   amino acid) (Willumsen *et al.*, *Nature* 310:583-586 (1984)). Depending on the specific sequence, this motif serves as a signal sequence for the enzymes farnesyl-protein transferase or geranylgeranyl-protein transferase, which catalyze the alkylation of the cysteine residue of the CAAX motif with a C<sub>15</sub> or C<sub>20</sub> isoprenoid, respectively. Such enzymes
- 35                   may be generally termed prenyl-protein transferase. (S. Clarke., *Ann.*

*Rev. Biochem.* 61:355-386 (1992); W.R. Schafer and J. Rine, *Ann. Rev. Genetics* 30:209-237 (1992)). The Ras protein is one of several proteins that are known to undergo post-translational farnesylation. Other farnesylated proteins include the Ras-related GTP-binding proteins  
5 such as Rho, fungal mating factors, the nuclear lamins, and the gamma subunit of transducin. James, et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 269, 14182 (1994) have identified a peroxisome associated protein Pxf which is also farnesylated. James, et al., have also suggested that there are farnesylated proteins of unknown structure and function in addition to  
10 those listed above.

Inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase has been shown to block the growth of Ras-transformed cells in soft agar and to modify other aspects of their transformed phenotype. It has also been demonstrated that certain inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase  
15 selectively block the processing of the Ras oncoprotein intracellularly (N.E. Kohl *et al.*, *Science*, 260:1934-1937 (1993) and G.L. James *et al.*, *Science*, 260:1937-1942 (1993). Recently, it has been shown that an inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase blocks the growth of *ras*-dependent tumors in nude mice (N.E. Kohl *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci U.S.A.*, 91:9141-9145 (1994) and induces regression of mammary and  
20 salivary carcinomas in *ras* transgenic mice (N.E. Kohl *et al.*, *Nature Medicine*, 1:792-797 (1995).

Indirect inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase *in vivo* has been demonstrated with lovastatin (Merck & Co., Rahway, NJ) and compactin (Hancock *et al.*, *ibid*; Casey *et al.*, *ibid*; Schafer *et al.*, *Science*  
25 245:379 (1989)). These drugs inhibit HMG-CoA reductase, the rate limiting enzyme for the production of polyisoprenoids including farnesyl pyrophosphate. Farnesyl-protein transferase utilizes farnesyl pyrophosphate to covalently modify the Cys thiol group of the Ras CAAX  
30 box with a farnesyl group (Reiss *et al.*, *Cell*, 62:81-88 (1990); Schaber *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 265:14701-14704 (1990); Schafer *et al.*, *Science*, 249:1133-1139 (1990); Manne *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA*, 87:7541-7545 (1990)). Inhibition of farnesyl pyrophosphate biosynthesis by inhibiting HMG-CoA reductase blocks Ras membrane localization in  
35 cultured cells. However, direct inhibition of farnesyl-protein transferase

would be more specific and attended by fewer side effects than would occur with the required dose of a general inhibitor of isoprene biosynthesis.

Inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) have  
5 been described in two general classes. The first are analogs of farnesyl  
diphosphate (FPP), while the second class of inhibitors is related to the  
protein substrates (e.g., Ras) for the enzyme. The peptide derived  
inhibitors that have been described are generally cysteine containing  
10 molecules that are related to the CAAX motif that is the signal for  
protein prenylation. (Schaber *et al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et al.*, *ibid*; Reiss *et al.*,  
*PNAS*, 88:732-736 (1991)). Such inhibitors may inhibit protein  
prenylation while serving as alternate substrates for the farnesyl-  
protein transferase enzyme, or may be purely competitive inhibitors  
15 (U.S. Patent 5,141,851, University of Texas; N.E. Kohl *et al.*, *Science*,  
260:1934-1937 (1993); Graham, *et al.*, *J. Med. Chem.*, 37, 725 (1994)). In  
general, deletion of the thiol from a CAAX derivative has been shown to  
dramatically reduce the inhibitory potency of the compound. However,  
the thiol group potentially places limitations on the therapeutic  
20 application of FPTase inhibitors with respect to pharmacokinetics,  
pharmacodynamics and toxicity. Therefore, a functional replacement  
for the thiol is desirable.

It has recently been reported that farnesyl-protein  
transferase inhibitors are inhibitors of proliferation of vascular smooth  
muscle cells and are therefore useful in the prevention and therapy of  
25 arteriosclerosis and diabetic disturbance of blood vessels (JP H7-112930).

It has recently been disclosed that certain tricyclic  
compounds which optionally incorporate a piperidine moiety are  
inhibitors of FPTase (WO 95/10514, WO 95/10515 and WO 95/10516).  
Imidazole-containing inhibitors of farnesyl protein transferase have  
30 also been disclosed (WO 95/09001 and EP 0 675 112 A1).

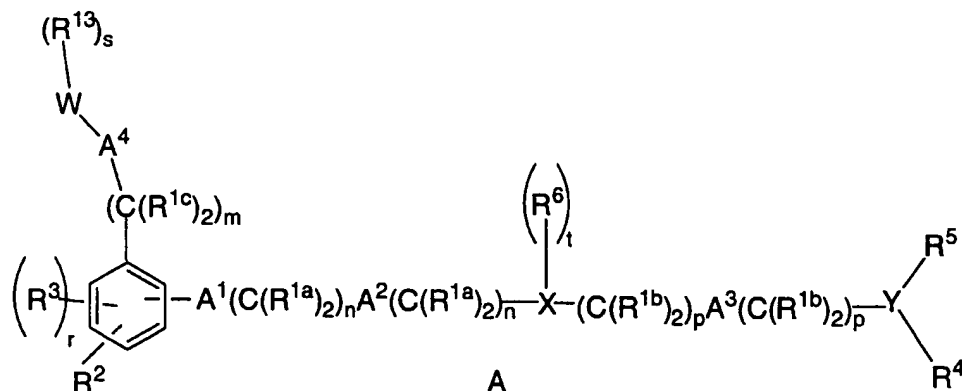
It is, therefore, an object of this invention to develop  
compounds that inhibit prenyl-protein transferase and thus, the post-  
translational isoprenylation of proteins. It is a further object of this  
invention to develop chemotherapeutic compositions containing the

compounds of this invention and methods for producing the compounds of this invention.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

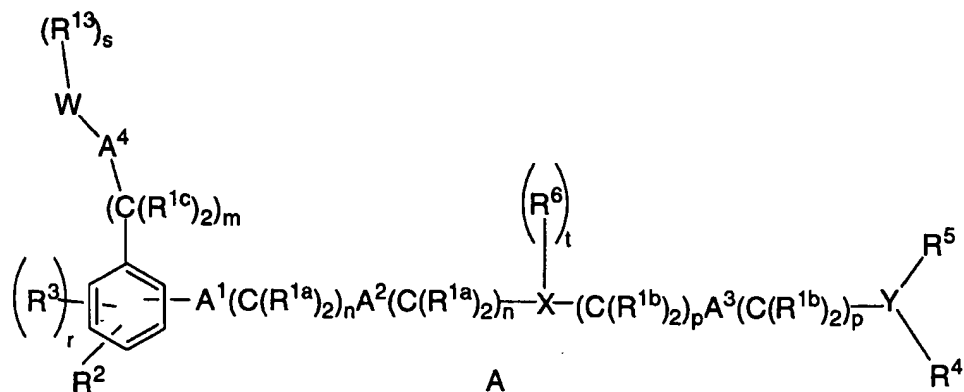
5           The present invention comprises small molecule phenyl-containing compounds which inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase. Further contained in this invention are chemotherapeutic compositions containing these prenyl transferase inhibitors and methods for their production.

10           The compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula A:



### 15 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The compounds of this invention are useful in the inhibition of prenyl-protein transferase and the prenylation of the oncogene protein Ras. In a first embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5       a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10      c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;
- 15      R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:
  - a) hydrogen,
  - b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - 20    e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - h) N<sub>3</sub>,
  - i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
  - 25    j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=CH-,



- k)  $R^8C\equiv C-$ , and  
 l)  $OR^8$ ;

$R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN,  $NO_2$ , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 $N_3$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  $HC\equiv C-$ , unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  $CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O-$ ,  $CF_3CH_2O-$ ,  
 $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $OR^8$ ,  $N(R^8)_2$ ,  $-C(O)R^8$ ,  $-O(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 $-NHC(O)R^8$ , aralkyl, heteroaralkyl,  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 10  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})C(O)R^8$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^8$  and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

$R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 15 c)  $NO_2$ ,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 20 h)  $R^8O-$ ,  
 i)  $N_3$ ,  
 j)  $R^9S(O)_q-$ ,  
 k)  $-HC=CH_2$ ,  
 l)  $-C\equiv CH$ ,  
 25 m)  $CF_3$   
 n)  $R^8O(C=O)-$ , and  
 o)  $R^8(O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

$R^9$  is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 5           H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

10   A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- a)   a bond,  
          b)   -HC=CH-,  
          c)   -C≡C-,  
          d)   -O-,  
15       e)   -(C=O)-,  
          f)   -O(C=O)-,  
          g)   -(C=O)O-,  
          h)   -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
          i)   -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
20       j)   -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
          k)   -NHC(O)NH-,  
          l)   -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          m)   -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
          n)   -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

25

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a)   hydrogen,  
30       b)   heterocycle, and  
          c)   aryl;

X is selected from:

- a)   aryl,

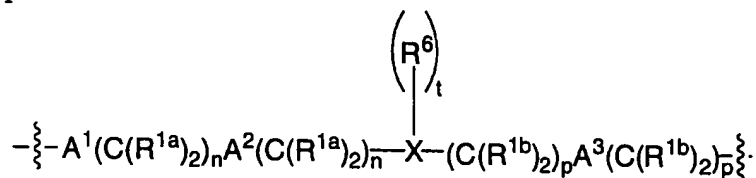
- b) cycloalkyl,
- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

5 Y is selected from:

- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) cycloalkyl;

- 10 m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 q is 0, 1 or 2;  
 r is 0, 1, 2 or 3;  
 15 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and;  
 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

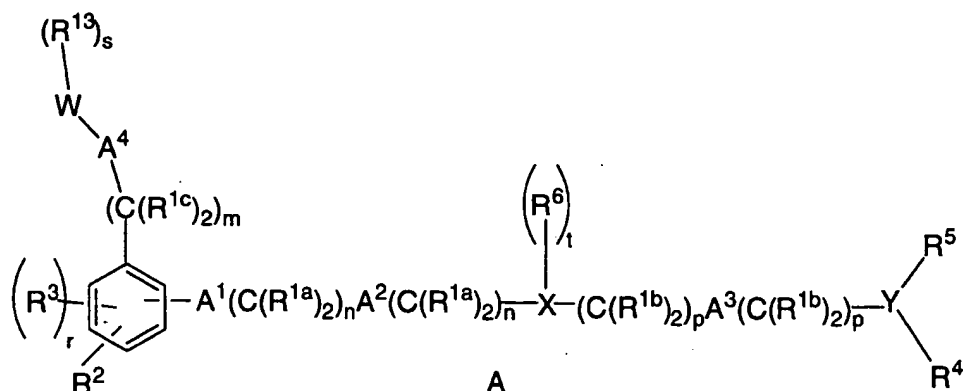
provided that



- 20 is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

- 25 In a further embodiment of this invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula A:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5       a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10      c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;
- 15      R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:
  - a) hydrogen,
  - b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - 20    e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - h) N<sub>3</sub>,
  - i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
  - 25    j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=C-,

- k)  $R^8C\equiv C-$ , and  
 l)  $OR^8$ ;

$R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN,  $NO_2$ , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 $N_3$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  $-C\equiv CH$ , unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  $CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O-$ ,  $CF_3CH_2O-$ ,  
 $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $OR^8$ ,  $N(R^8)_2$ ,  $-C(O)R^8$ ,  $-O(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 $-NHC(O)R^8$ , aralkyl, heteroaralkyl,  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 10  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})C(O)R^8$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^8$  and  $\begin{array}{c} -C=C-R^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \quad H \end{array}$  OH ;

$R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 15 c)  $NO_2$ ,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 20 h)  $R^8O-$ , unsubstituted or substituted,  
 i)  $N_3$ ,  
 j)  $R^9S(O)_q-$ ,  
 k)  $-HC=CH_2$ ,  
 l)  $-C\equiv CH$ ,  
 25 m)  $CF_3$   
 n)  $R^8O(C=O)-$ , and  
 o)  $R^8(O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

$R^9$  is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from .

- 5           H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

10   A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- a)    a bond,  
          b)    -HC=CH-,  
          c)    -C≡C-,  
          d)    -O-,  
15       e)    -(C=O)-,  
          f)    -O(C=O)-,  
          g)    -(C=O)O-,  
          h)    -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
          i)    -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
20       j)    -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
          k)    -NHC(O)NH-,  
          l)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          m)   -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
          n)   -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

25

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a)    heterocycle, and  
30       b)    aryl;

X is selected from:

- a)    aryl,  
          b)    cycloalkyl,

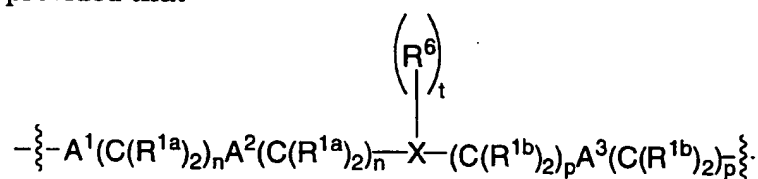
- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) cycloalkyl;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- 10 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- q is 0, 1 or 2;
- r is 1 or 2;
- s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
- 15 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that

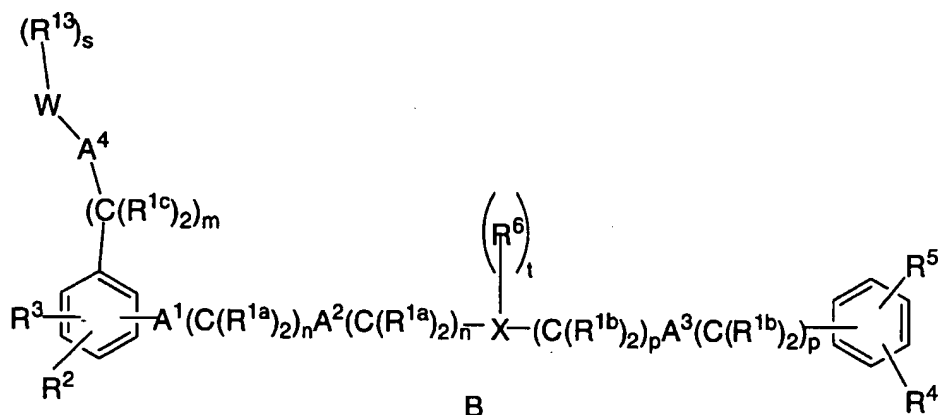


is not a bond;

20

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N<sub>3</sub>,
- i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=CH-,
- 25 k) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C-, and



l) OR<sup>8</sup>;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 10 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 15 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,  
 20 i) N<sub>3</sub>,  
 j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
 k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,  
 l) -C≡CH,  
 m) CF<sub>3</sub>  
 25 n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and  
 o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O-;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from

- hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 30 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 5           H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

10   A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- a)    a bond,  
          b)    -HC=CH-,  
          c)    -C≡C-,  
          d)    -O-,  
15          e)    -(C=O)-,  
          f)    -O(C=O)-,  
          g)    -(C=O)O-,  
          h)    -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
          i)    -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
20          j)    -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
          k)    -NHC(O)NH-,  
          l)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          m)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
          n)    -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

25

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a)    heterocycle, and  
30          b)    aryl;

X is selected from:

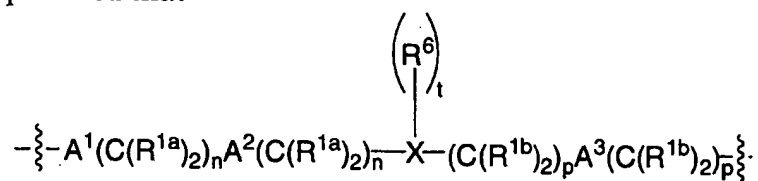
- a)    aryl,  
          b)    cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and  
d) a bond;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
5 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
q is 0, 1 or 2;  
s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and  
t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

10

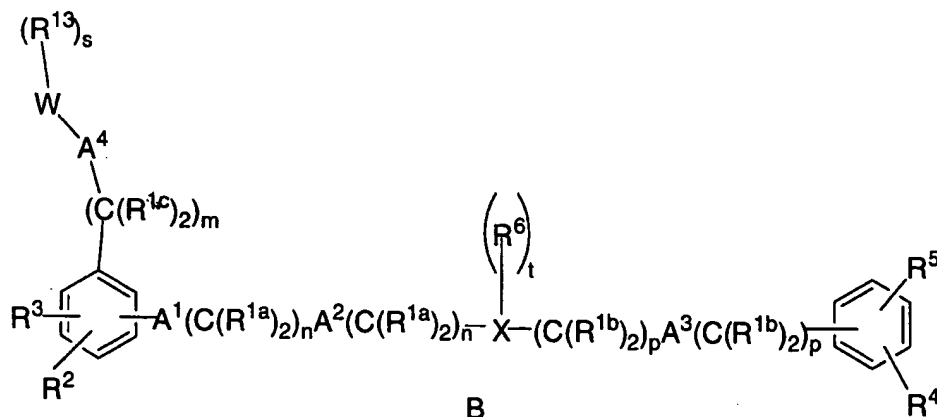
provided that



is not a bond;

- 15 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In further embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by formula B:



- 20 wherein:

R1a, R1b and R1c are independently selected from:

- 5
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
  - c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

10

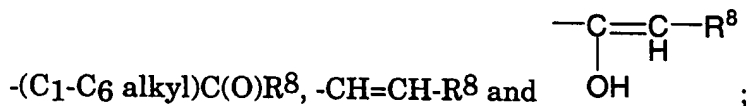
R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- 15 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N<sub>3</sub>,
- 20 i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=CH-,
- k) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C-, and
- l) OR<sup>8</sup>;

25 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,

30



R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- 5 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,
- i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- 10 j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,
- k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF<sub>3</sub>
- n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and
- 15 o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O-;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

20

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

25 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
 alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

30

A<sup>1</sup> is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -O-,
- c) -(C=O)-,
- 35 d) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,

- e)  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^8)-$ , and
- f)  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_q-$ ;

$\text{A}^2$  and  $\text{A}^3$  are independently selected from:

- 5 a) a bond,
- b)  $-\text{HC}=\text{CH}-$ ,
- c)  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{C}-$ ,
- d)  $-\text{O}-$ ,
- e)  $-(\text{C}=\text{O})-$ ,
- 10 f)  $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})-$ ,
- g)  $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,
- h)  $-\text{NR}^8-$ ,
- i)  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^8)-$ ,
- j)  $-\text{N}(\text{R}^8)\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,
- 15 k)  $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$ ,
- l)  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_q-$ ,
- m)  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_q\text{NH}-$ , and
- n)  $-\text{NHS}(\text{O})_q-$ ;

20  $\text{A}^4$  is selected from a bond,  $\text{C}(\text{O})$ ,  $\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ , or spiro  $\text{C}_3\text{-C}_6$  cycloalkyl;

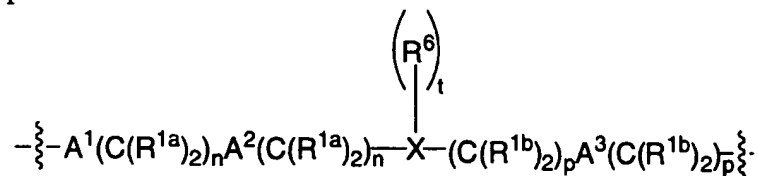
W is a heterocycle,

X is selected from:

- 25 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- 30 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- q is 0, 1 or 2;
- s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and
- t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that



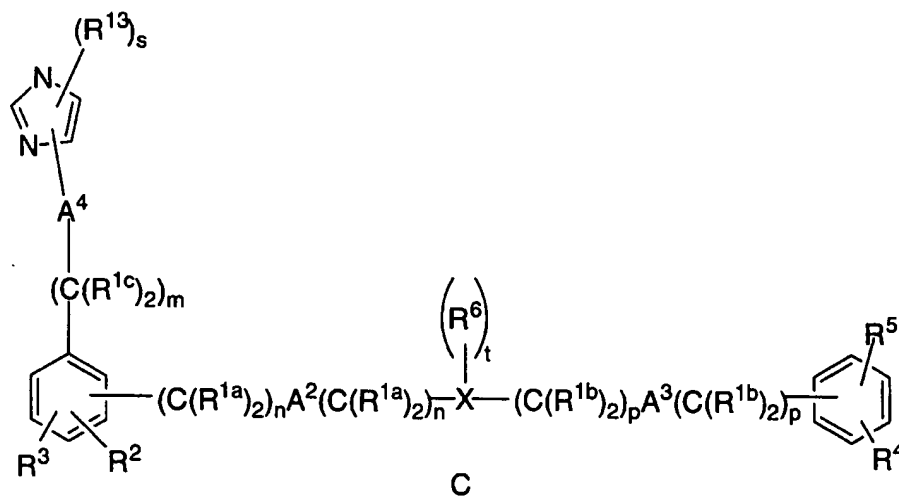
is not a bond;

5

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula

10 C:



wherein:

R1a, R1b and R1c are independently selected from:

- 15
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C1-C6 alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;

- c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

5

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 10 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and  
 15 i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 20 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$
  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and OH ;

25 R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 d) halogen,  
 30 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,



- i)  $N_3$ ,
- j)  $R^9S(O)_q-$ ,
- k)  $CF_3$
- l)  $R^8O(C=O)-$ , and
- 5 m)  $R^8(O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from  
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

10

$R^9$  is independently selected from  
H, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, benzyl and  
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

- 15  $R^{13}$  is independently selected from  
H, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted  
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
-( $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OR^8$ , -( $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OC(O)(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl), -( $C_1$ - $C_6$   
alkyl) $N(R^8)_2$ , and -( $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $NHC(O)(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $R^8$ ;

20

$A^2$  is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b)  $-HC=CH-$ ,
- c)  $-C\equiv C-$ ,
- 25 d)  $-O-$ ,
- e)  $-(C=O)-$ ,
- f)  $-O(C=O)-$ ,
- g)  $-(C=O)O-$ ,
- h)  $-NR^8-$ ,
- 30 i)  $-C(O)N(R^8)-$ ,
- j)  $-N(R^8)C(O)-$ ,
- k)  $-NHC(O)NH-$ ,
- l)  $-S(O)_q-$ ,
- m)  $-S(O)_qNH-$ , and

n)  $-\text{NHS}(\text{O})_{\text{q}}-$ ;

$\text{A}^3$  is selected from:

- 5 a) a bond,  
 b)  $-\text{O}-$ ,  
 c)  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{\text{q}}-$ ,  
 d)  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{\text{q}}\text{NH}-$ ,  
 e)  $-\text{NR}^8-$ ,  
 f)  $-(\text{C}=\text{O})-$ ,  
 10 g)  $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  
 h)  $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})-$ ,  
 i)  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^8)-$ ,  
 j)  $-\text{N}(\text{R}^8)\text{C}(\text{O})-$ , and  
 k)  $-\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{NH}-$ ;

15

$\text{A}^4$  is selected from a bond,  $\text{C}(\text{O})$ ,  $\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ , or spiro  $\text{C}_3\text{-C}_6$  cycloalkyl;

$\text{X}$  is selected from:

- 20 a) aryl,  
 b) heterocycle, and  
 c) a bond;

$m$  is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

$n$  is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

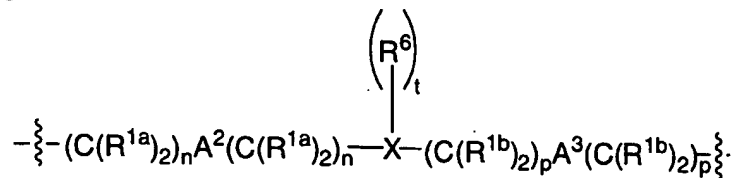
25  $p$  is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

$q$  is 0, 1 or 2;

$s$  is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

$t$  is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

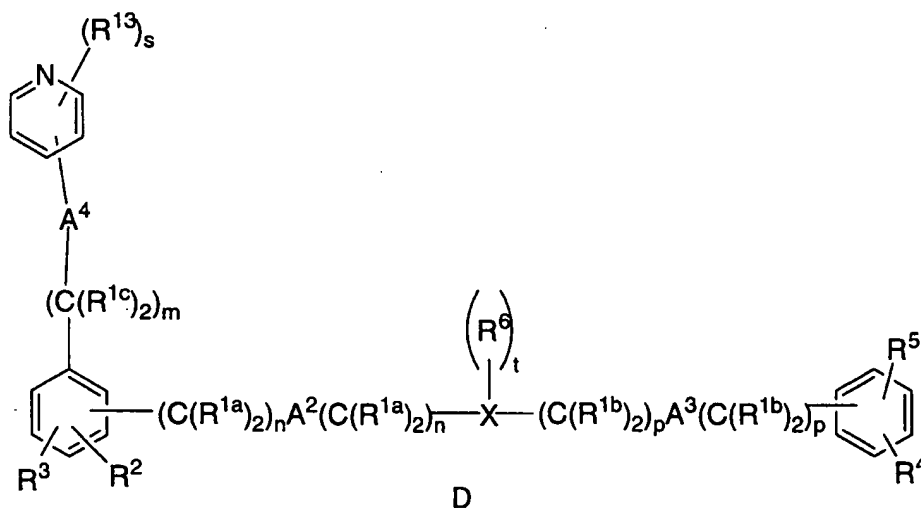
30 provided that



is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

- 5 In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula D:



wherein:

- 10 R1a, R1b and R1c are independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C1-C6 alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
  - 15 c) C1-C6 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

20

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,

- b) CN,  
 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 5 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted  
 h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and  
 i) OR<sup>8</sup>;
- 10 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:  
 H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 15 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

- R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:
- a) hydrogen,  
 20 b) CN,  
 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 25 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,  
 i) N<sub>3</sub>,  
 j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
 k) CF<sub>3</sub>  
 30 l) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and  
 m) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O-;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from

- 5                   H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
                  unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 10                   H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
                  or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
                  -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
                  alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

A<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15           a)     a bond,  
             b)     -HC=CH-,  
             c)     -C≡C-,  
             d)     -O-,  
             e)     -(C=O)-,  
20           f)     -O(C=O)-,  
             g)     -(C=O)O-,  
             h)     -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
             i)     -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
             j)     -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
25           k)     -NHC(O)NH-,  
             l)     -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
             m)     -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
             n)     -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

30    A<sup>3</sup> is selected from:

- a)     a bond,  
          b)     -O-,  
          c)     -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          d)     -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-,

- 5 e) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
 f) -(C=O)-,  
 g) -(C=O)O-,  
 h) -O(C=O)-,  
 i) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
 j) -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-, and  
 k) -NHC(O)NH-;

10 A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,  
 b) heterocycle, and  
 c) a bond;

15

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

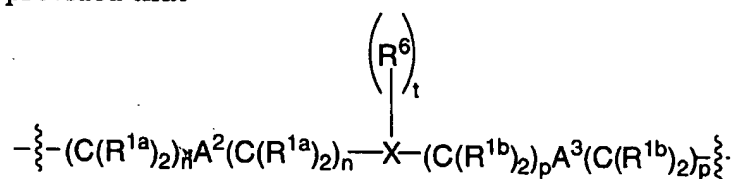
p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

20 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

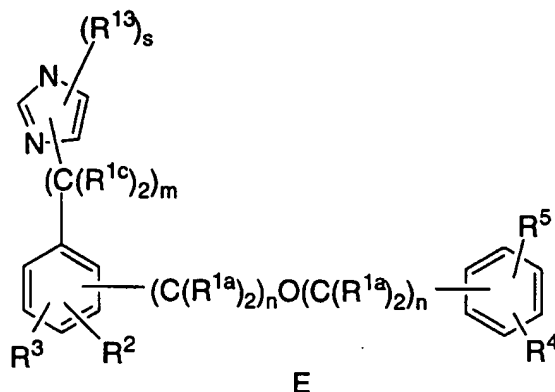
provided that



25 is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

30 In another embodiment of the instant invention, the inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula E:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- c) 10 C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and
- i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

25 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 5 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$
  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
 20 alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

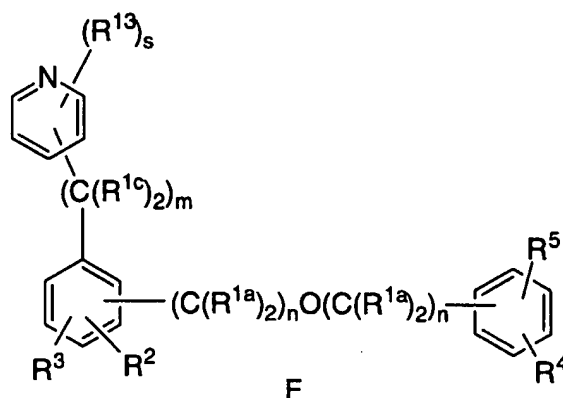
q is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

30 In another embodiment of the instant invention, the  
 inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula  
 F:





wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and
- i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

25 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 5 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$

-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and ;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

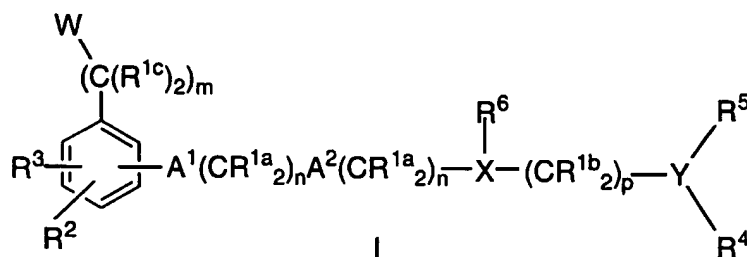
R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
 20 alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 q is 0, 1 or 2; and  
 25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In second embodiment of the instant invention, the  
 30 inhibitors of a prenyl-protein transferase are illustrated by the formula  
 I:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5       a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, or N<sub>3</sub>;
- 10      c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

15   R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- 20      e) aryl,
- f) heteroaryl,
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,
- h) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy,
- i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- 25      j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- k) R<sup>8</sup>C=C, and
- l) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5           a) H,  
          b) CN,  
          c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
          d) halogen,  
          e) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
          f) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy,  
          g) N<sub>3</sub>,  
          h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,  
          i) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,  
10          j) -C≡CH,  
          k) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
          l) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted,  
          m) CF<sub>3</sub>O-,  
          n) CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
15          o) C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, and  
          p) CF<sub>3</sub>;

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- 20          a) hydrogen,  
          b) CN,  
          c) NO<sub>2</sub>,  
          d) halogen,  
          e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
          f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
25          g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
          h) R<sup>8</sup>O,  
          i) N<sub>3</sub>,  
          j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,  
          k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,  
30          l) -C≡CH,  
          m) CF<sub>3</sub>  
          n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O), and  
          o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

5

A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- 10 d) O,
- e) S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- f) O(C=O),
- g) (O=C), and
- h) (C=O)O;

15

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- 20 c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

20

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- c) cycloalkyl,
- 25 d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

25

Y is selected from:

- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 30 b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

30

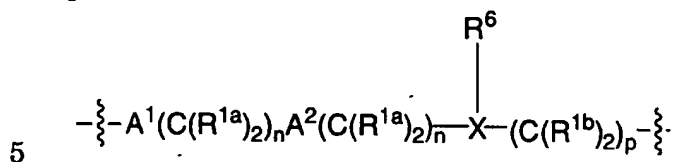
m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

q is 0, 1 or 2;

provided that

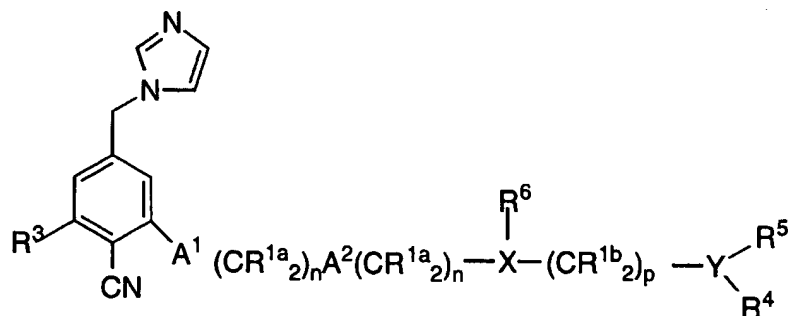


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

A preferred embodiment of the compounds of this invention are illustrated by the formula Ia:



15

wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> is selected from: hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

20 R<sup>1b</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) aryl, heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, R<sup>8</sup>O- or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl,

- c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, or R<sup>8</sup>O-;

5 R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N<sub>3</sub>, CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

R<sup>5</sup> is selected from:

- 10 a) hydrogen, and  
b) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl substituted with hydrogen or a group selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, CF<sub>3</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, and CN;

15

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- 20 a) hydrogen,  
b) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, and  
c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl substituted by C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> perfluoroalkyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, or R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-;

20

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25 R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> are independently selected from: a bond, -HC=CH-, -C≡C-, O, S(O)<sub>q</sub>, O(C=O), and (O=C)O;

30 X is selected from:

- a) aryl,  
b) heteroaryl,  
c) cycloalkyl,  
d) heterocycle, and  
35 e) a bond;

35

Y is selected from:

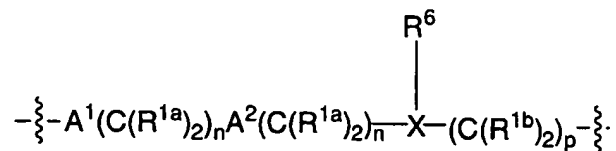
- 5      a) aryl,  
       b) substituted aryl,  
       c) heterocycle, and  
       d) substituted heterocycle;

n is            0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is            0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

10    q is            0, 1, or 2;

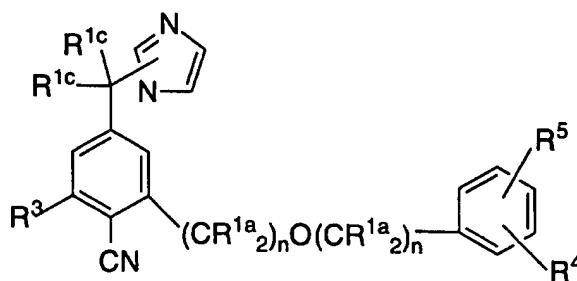
provided that



15    is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20    A further embodiment of the compounds of the instant invention is illustrated by Formula Ib:



Ib

wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> is selected from:



- 5
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, or N<sub>3</sub>;
  - c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or -R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

10

R<sup>1c</sup> is independently selected from: H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl;

- 15
- R<sup>3</sup> is selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N<sub>3</sub>, CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

20

- a) H,
- b) halogen,
- c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- e) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

25

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

30

n is independently selected from: 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and  
q is 0, 1 or 2;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

35

Specific examples of the compounds of the invention are:

- 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile
- 3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine
- 15 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(1-naphthyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(3-n-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35

- 2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea
- 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea
- 20 2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 35

- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 10 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 15 4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile
- N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9*H*-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 20 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*phenyl-benzamide
- 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
- 25 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
- 2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzenesulfonamide
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 35 3-(9*H*-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide
- 2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-*N*-phenyl-acetamide
- 20 acetamide
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 25 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide
- 5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide
- 30 *N*-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-nicotinamide
- 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 35



- 4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole
- acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester
- 10 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 15 N-{3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl}-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide
- 20 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

10 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

15 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

20 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

25 2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-(3-*tert*-butyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

30 2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-(5-chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

5

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

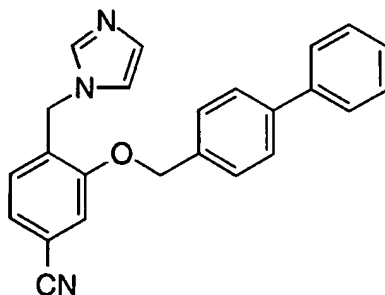
4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

10

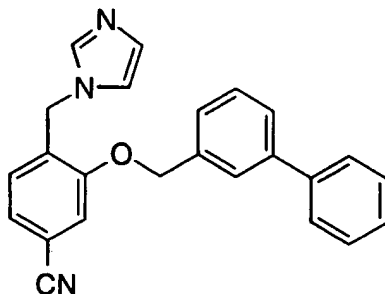
or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The preferred compounds of the instant invention are:

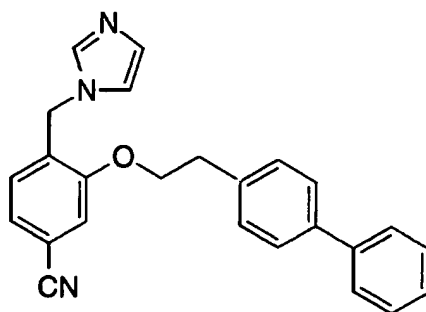
15



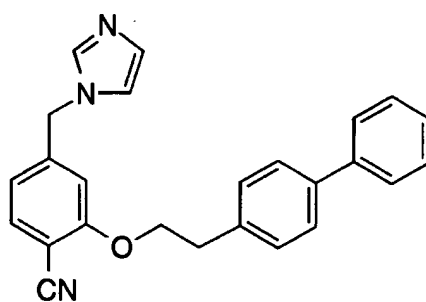
3-(Biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile



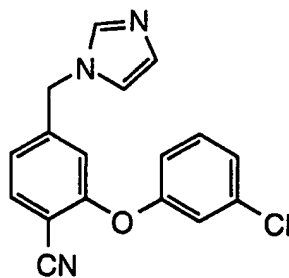
20 3-(Biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile



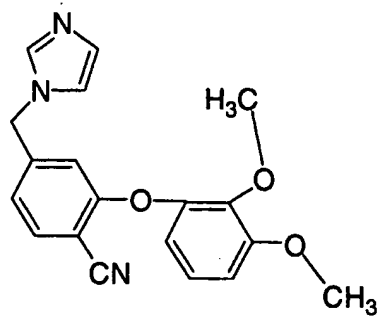
3-(Biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile.



5 2-(Biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

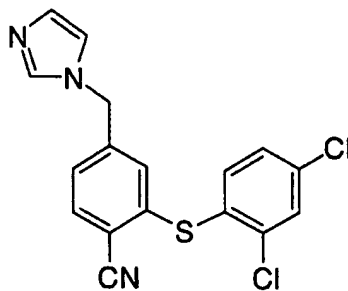


2-(3-Chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

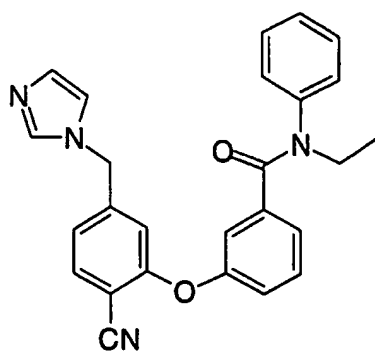


4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5

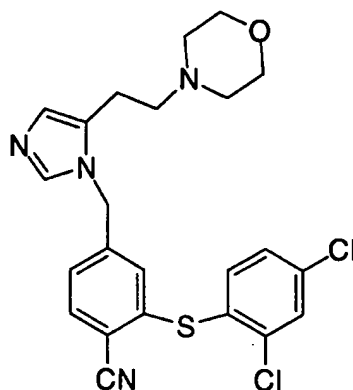


2-(2,4-Dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

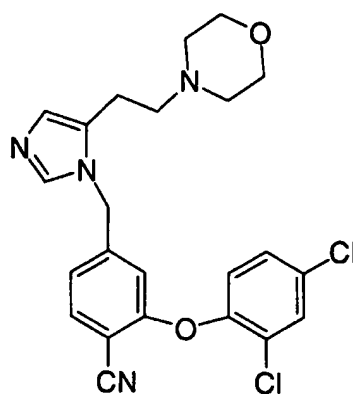


10

3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

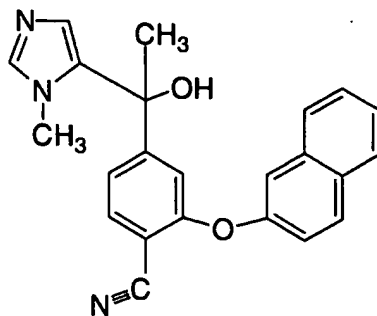


2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

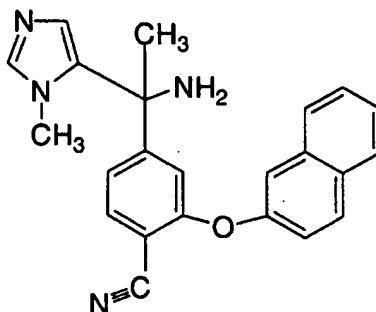


5

2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile



4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile



5 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10 The compounds of the present invention may have asymmetric centers and occur as racemates, racemic mixtures, and as individual diastereomers, with all possible isomers, including optical isomers, being included in the present invention. When any variable, substituent or term (e.g. aryl, heterocycle, R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, n, p, etc.) occurs  
 15 more than one time in a formula or generic structure, its definition at each occurrence is independent of the definition at every other occurrence. Also, combinations of substituents/or variables are permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

As used herein, "alkyl" is intended to include both  
 20 branched and straight-chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, unless otherwise specified; "alkoxy" represents an alkyl group having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, unless otherwise indicated, attached through an oxygen bridge. "Halogen" or "halo" as used herein means fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo.

25 As used herein, "aryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic. Examples of such aryl

elements include phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl, indanyl, indanonyl, biphenyl, tetralinyl, tetralonyl, fluorenonyl, phenanthryl, anthryl or acenaphthyl.

As used herein, "aralkyl" is intended to mean an aryl moiety, as defined above, attached through a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl linker, where  
5 alkyl is defined above. Examples of aralkyls include, but are not limited to, benzyl, naphthylmethyl and phenylpropyl.

As used herein, "heteroaralkyl" is intended to mean a heteroaryl moiety, as defined below, attached through a C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl  
10 linker, where alkyl is defined above. Examples of heteroaralkyls include, but are not limited to, 2-pyridylmethyl, 2-imidazolylethyl, 2-quinolinylmethyl, 2-imidazolylmethyl and the like.

The term heterocycle or heterocyclic, as used herein, represents a stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic or stable 8- to  
15 11-membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is either saturated or unsaturated, and which consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S, and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined heterocyclic rings is fused to a benzene ring. The heterocyclic ring may  
20 be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, azepinyl, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, benzopyrazolyl, chromanyl,  
25 cinnolinyl, dibenzofuranyl, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolidinyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolyl, indolinyl, indolyl, isochromanyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolidinyl, isothiazolyl, isothiazolidinyl, morpholinyl, naphthyridinyl, oxadiazolyl,  
30 2-oxoazepinyl, 2-oxopiperazinyl, 2-oxopiperdinyl, 2-oxopyrrolidinyl, 2-oxopyridyl, 2-oxoquinolinyl, piperidyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolidinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, quinoxalinyl, tetrahydrofuryl, tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, thiamorpholinyl,



thiamorpholinyl sulfoxide, thiazolyl, thiazoliny, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, thienyl and triazolyl.

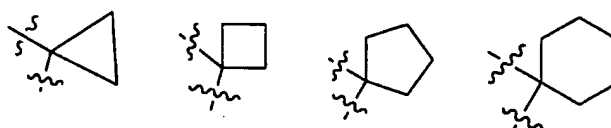
As used herein, "heteroaryl" is intended to mean any stable monocyclic or bicyclic carbon ring of up to 7 members in each ring, wherein at least one ring is aromatic and wherein from one to four carbon atoms are replaced by heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S. Examples of such heterocyclic elements include, but are not limited to, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzofurazanyl, benzopyranyl, benzothiopyranyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzothienyl, benzoxazolyl, chromanyl, cinnoliny, dihydrobenzofuryl, dihydrobenzothienyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl, dihydrobenzothiopyranyl sulfone, furyl, imidazolyl, indoliny, indolyl, isochromanyl, isoindoliny, isoquinoliny, isothiazolyl, naphthyridiny, oxadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyraziny, pyrazolyl, pyridaziny, pyrimidiny, pyrrolyl, quinazoliny, quinoliny, quinoxaliny, tetrahydroisoquinoliny, tetrahydroquinoliny, thiazolyl, thienofuryl, thienothienyl, and thienyl.

As used herein, the terms "substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl" and "substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy" are intended to include the branch or straight-chain alkyl group of the specified number of carbon atoms, wherein the carbon atoms may be substituted with F, Cl, Br, CF<sub>3</sub>, N<sub>3</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub>, NH<sub>2</sub>, oxo, -OH, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, -C(O)NH-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)NH-, H<sub>2</sub>N-C(NH)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)-, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)CF<sub>3</sub>, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)NH-, aryl, benzyl, heterocycle, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, halo-aryl, halo-benzyl, halo-heterocycle, cyano-aryl, cyano-benzyl and cyano-heterocycle.

As used herein, the terms "substituted aryl", "substituted heteroaryl", "substituted aralkyl" and "substituted heteroaralkyl" are intended to include the cyclic group containing from 1 to 3 substituents in addition to the point of attachment to the rest of the compound. Such substituents are preferably selected from the group which includes but is not limited to F, Cl, Br, CF<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>2</sub>, N(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, N<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, -

- OH, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)S(O)<sub>0-2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)NH-, H<sub>2</sub>N-C(NH)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)-, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)NH-, aryl, aralkyl,
- 5 heteroaryl, heteroaralkyl, halo-aryl, halo-aralkyl, halo-heterocycle, halo-heteroaralkyl, cyano-aryl, cyano-aralkyl, cyano-heterocycle and cyano-heteroaralkyl.

Examples of "spiro C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl" include:



- 10 Lines drawn into the ring systems from substituents (such as from R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> etc.) indicate that the indicated bond may be attached to any of the substitutable ring carbon atoms or heteroatom.

- Preferably, R<sup>1a</sup> and R<sup>1b</sup> are independently selected from: hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted aryl or unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl.
- 15

Preferably, R<sup>1c</sup> is selected from hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -OR<sup>8</sup>, -N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl.

- Preferably, R<sup>2</sup> is H, CN or halo. Most preferably, R<sup>2</sup> is CN.
- 20 Preferably, R<sup>3</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halo, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, and unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl.

- Preferably, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, N<sub>3</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>.
- 25

Preferably, R<sup>6</sup> is selected from: hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl.

- Preferably, R<sup>13</sup> is selected from hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and
- 30

-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>. More preferably, R<sup>13</sup> is substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>.

5 Preferably, A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> are independently selected from: a bond, O and S(O)<sub>q</sub>. More preferably, A<sup>1</sup> is a bond and A<sup>2</sup> is selected from O and S(O)<sub>q</sub>.

Preferably, A<sup>3</sup> is selected from a bond, O, -NR<sup>8</sup>, C(O), -S(O)<sub>q</sub>, -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>), -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O), -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH, -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>, or -NHC(O)NH.

10 Preferably A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl. Most preferably, A<sup>4</sup> is a bond.

Preferably, W is a heterocycle, selected from pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazoliny, pyridinyl, thiazolyl, pyridonyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, oxazolyl, indolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, triazolyl and thienyl. Most preferably, W is imidazolyl or pyridyl.

Preferably, X is selected from a bond, aryl and heterocycle.

Preferably, Y is selected from an unsubstituted or substituted aryl or an unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle. More preferably, Y is selected from phenyl, furyl, thienyl and pyridyl. Most preferably, Y is phenyl.

20 Preferably, m, n, p, q, r, s and t are independently 0, 1, or 2.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention include the conventional non-toxic salts of the compounds of this invention as formed, e.g., from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, sulfamic, phosphoric, nitric and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, stearic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, pamoic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, phenylacetic, glutamic, benzoic, salicylic, sulfanilic, 2-acetoxy-benzoic, fumaric, toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic, ethane disulfonic, oxalic, isethionic, trifluoroacetic and the like.

It is intended that the definition of any substituent or variable (e.g., R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup>, R<sup>13</sup>, n, p, etc.), at a particular location in a molecule, be independent of its definitions elsewhere in that molecule. Thus, -C(R<sup>1a</sup>)<sub>2</sub> represents -CH<sub>2</sub>, -CHCH<sub>3</sub>, -CHC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, etc. It is

5 understood that substituents and substitution patterns on the compounds of the instant invention can be selected by one of ordinary skill in the art to provide compounds that are chemically stable and that can be readily synthesized by techniques known in the art, as well as those methods set forth below, from readily available starting materials.

10 The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the compounds of this invention can be synthesized from the compounds of this invention which contain a basic moiety by conventional chemical methods.

Generally, the salts are prepared either by ion exchange chromatography or by reacting the free base with stoichiometric  
15 amounts or with an excess of the desired salt-forming inorganic or organic acid in a suitable solvent or various combinations of solvents.

These reactions may be employed in a linear sequence to provide the compounds of the invention or they may be used to synthesize fragments which are subsequently joined by the alkylation reactions  
20 described in the Schemes.

#### Synopsis of Schemes

Schemes 1 to 9 describe the synthesis of compounds of formulae A and I. The starting materials can be obtained from  
25 commercial sources or they can be obtained using standard transformations (e.g. esterification of the hydroxy acid) from commercially available materials.

In Scheme 1, amino-hydroxybenzoates of type II can be converted to the corresponding iodide III by treatment with acidic  
30 aqueous NaNO<sub>2</sub> followed by the addition of KI. The phenol may then be alkylated by treatment with a base such as NaH or Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> in an organic solvent (for example DMF) followed by the addition of an electrophile to yield IV. Reduction of the ester of IV using, for example, LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF then yields the alcohol V which can in turn be treated with Zn(CN)<sub>2</sub> in  
35 DMF and a palladium catalyst to give VI. The alcohol of VI can be

converted into a leaving group of VII in a number of ways. One such procedure involves reaction of the alcohol with a sulfonyl chloride in the presence of an organic base (e.g. triethylamine) in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane. A second method requires the reaction of the alcohol with CBr<sub>4</sub> and a phosphine such as triphenyl phosphine in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane. A third method involves reaction of the alcohol with N-bromosuccinimide and dimethyl sulfide in dichloromethane. The reaction of VII with imidazole in a polar solvent such as DMF then affords compounds of formula IA. In addition, VII upon reaction with 4-iodo-1-tritylimidazole in THF with 1,2-dibromoethane, Zn and NiCl<sub>2</sub>(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and subsequent methanolysis may yield compounds of formula IB.

Scheme 2 shows an alternative route for the conversion of III into VI employing chemical transformations described above.

In Scheme 3, the phenol X can be converted to the corresponding triflate XI using trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride in an organic solvent such as dichloromethane with an organic base such as triethylamine. The triflate may then be converted to the nitrile XII, the ester reduced to XIII and the alcohol transformed to a leaving group as shown in XIV using previously described reactions. Treatment of XIV as above would then produce compounds of formula IC or ID.

An alternative route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA and IB is given in Scheme 4. Methyl-hydroxybenzoic acids of structure XV may be bis alkylated by treatment with a base such as NaH or Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> in an organic solvent (for example DMF) followed by the addition of an electrophile to yield XVI saponification using aqueous hydroxide then affords the acid XVII. Acid XVII is then converted to the primary amide XIX via the acid chloride XVIII (prepared with thionyl chloride in a solvent such as toluene then a reaction with ammonia in, for example, chloroform). Treatment of XIX with thionyl chloride in DMF results in the nitrile XX which can be brominated at the benzylic position using, for example, N-bromosuccinimide and benzoyl peroxide in carbon tetrachloride. Transformations, as before, then yield IA or IB.

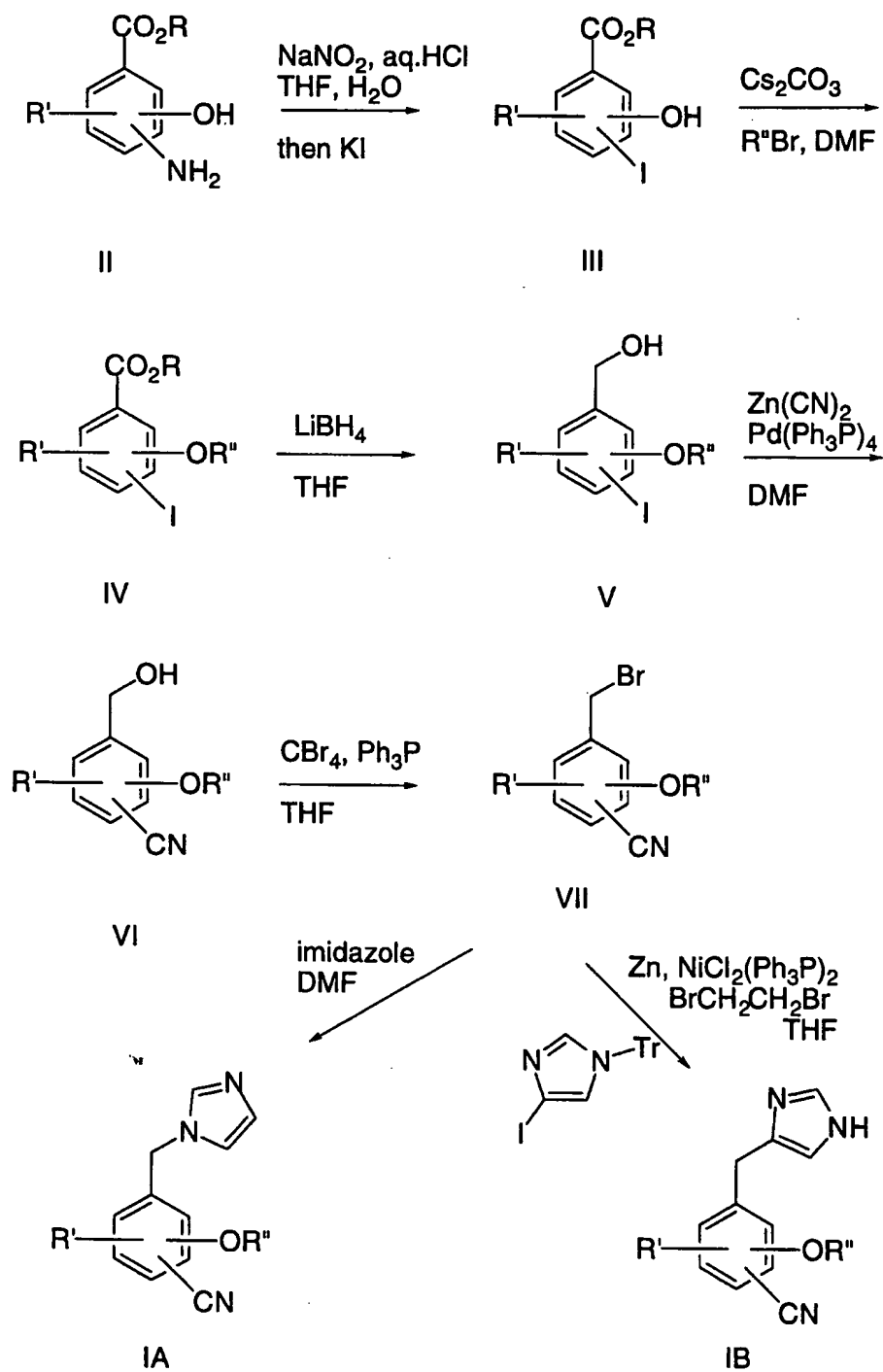
An alternative route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA and IB is shown in Scheme 5 which incorporates the reaction steps described above but alters the order of these transformations to give XXIV which is converted to IA by treatment with a halide or mesylate.

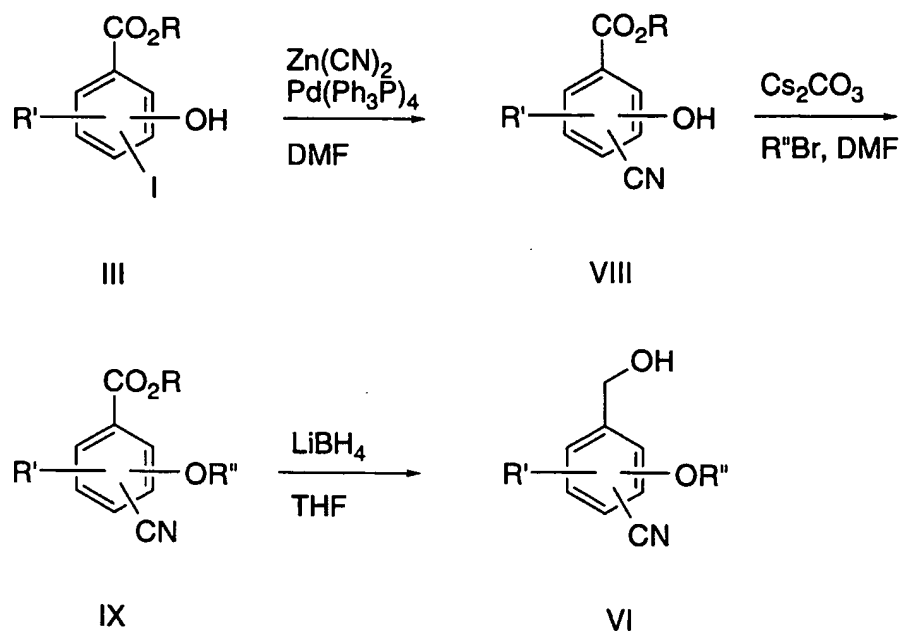
Two routes to compounds containing a diaryl ether linkage as illustrated in XXVII are described in Scheme 6. The bromo fluoride XXV is transformed to the fluoro nitrile with zinc cyanide, then converted to ID in a series of transformations described in previous schemes.

Scheme 7 illustrates yet another route for the synthesis of compounds of formula IA.

Schemes 8 and 9 describe routes for the preparation of compounds XXXIX and XXXX which contain a heteroatom at the benzylic position between W and the phenyl ring of IA.

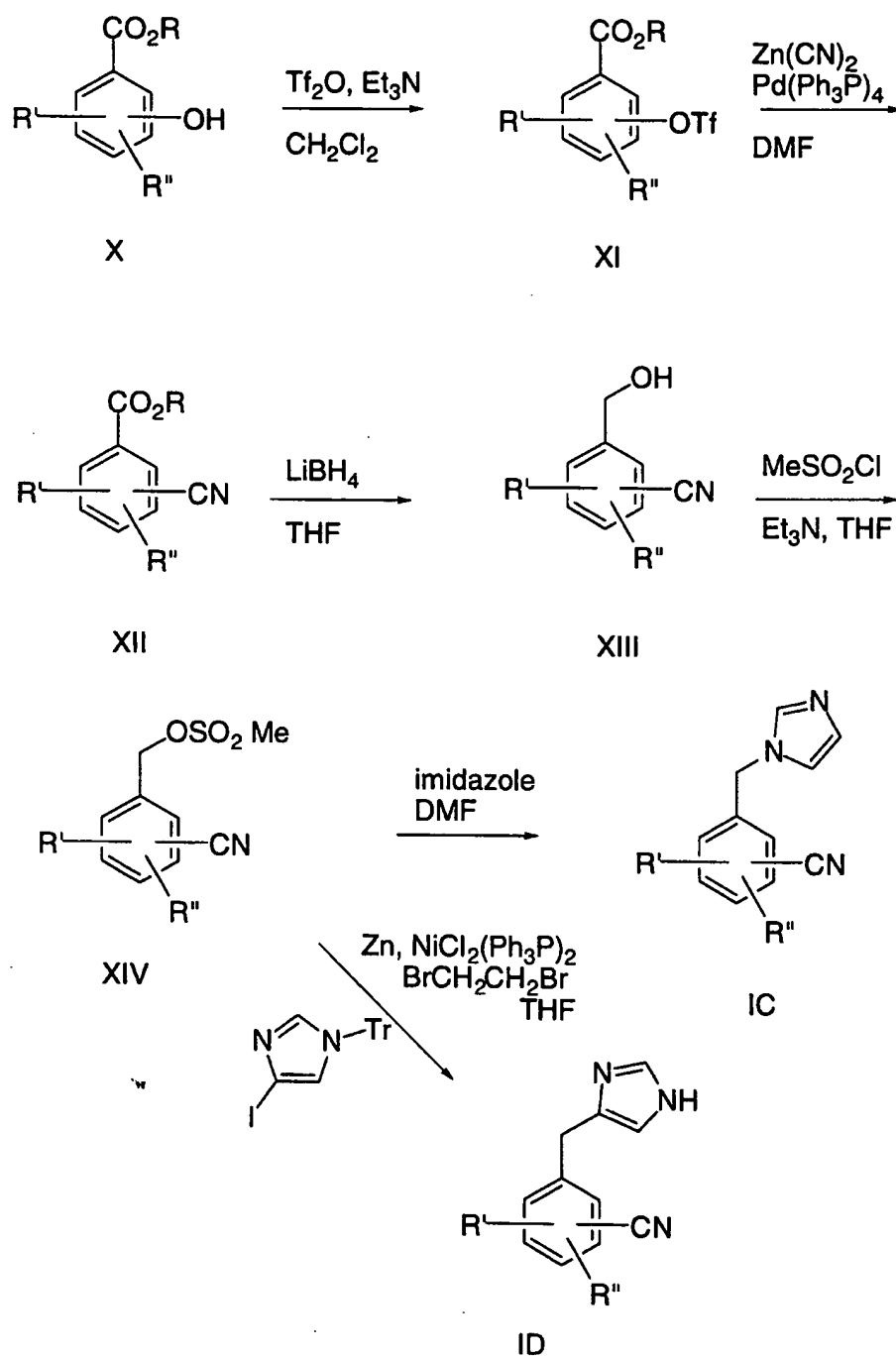
## SCHEME 1

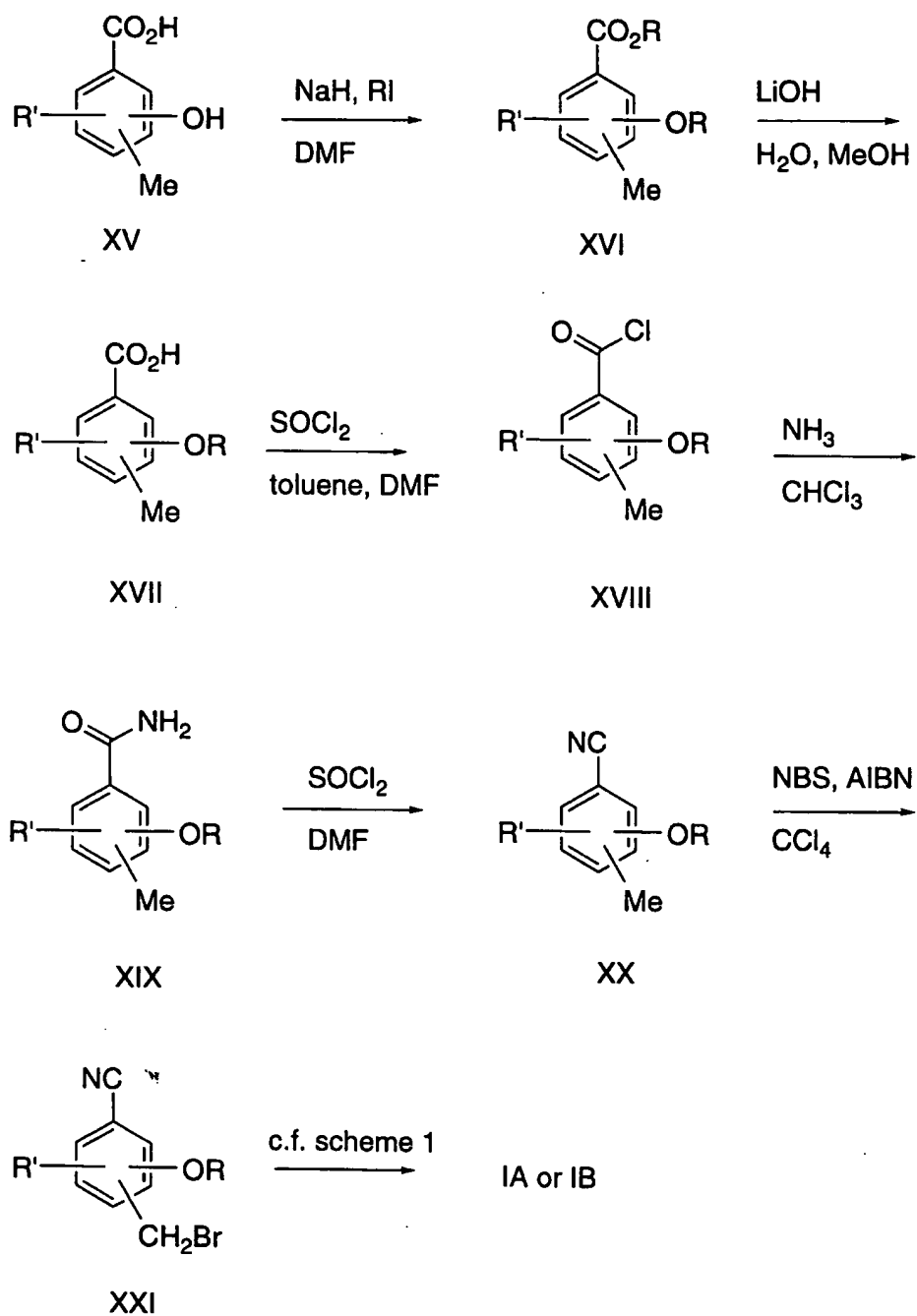


SCHEME 2

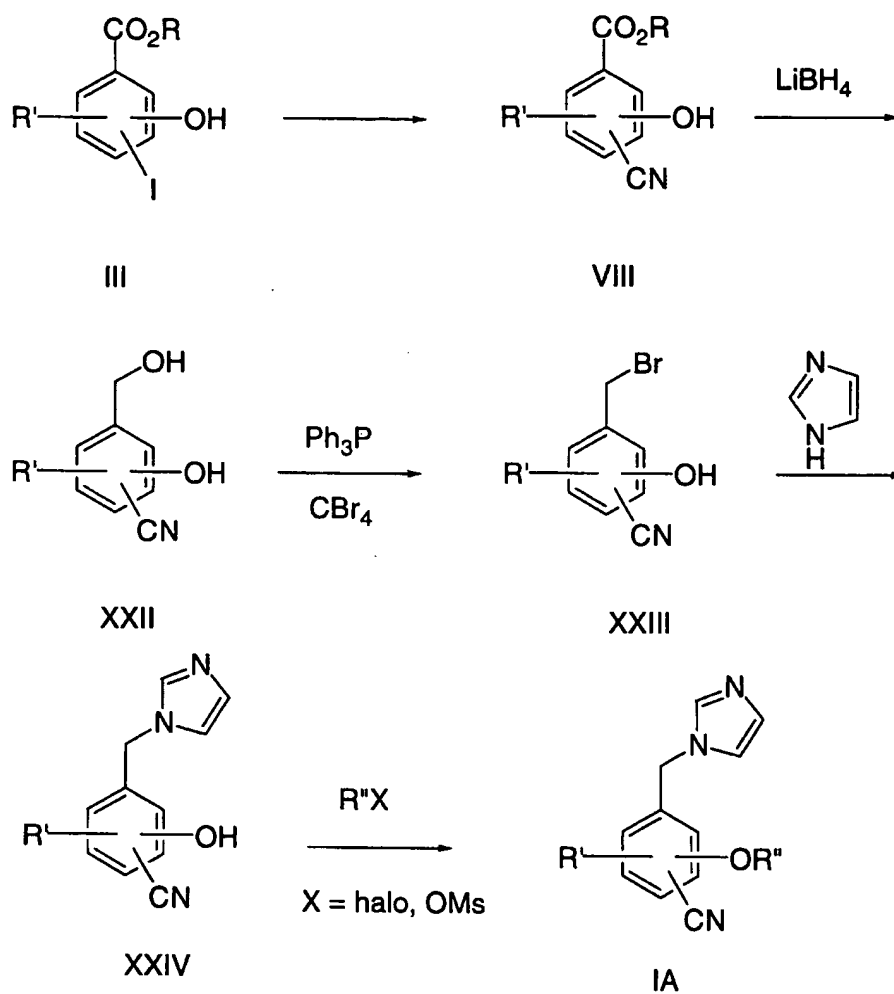


## SCHEME 3

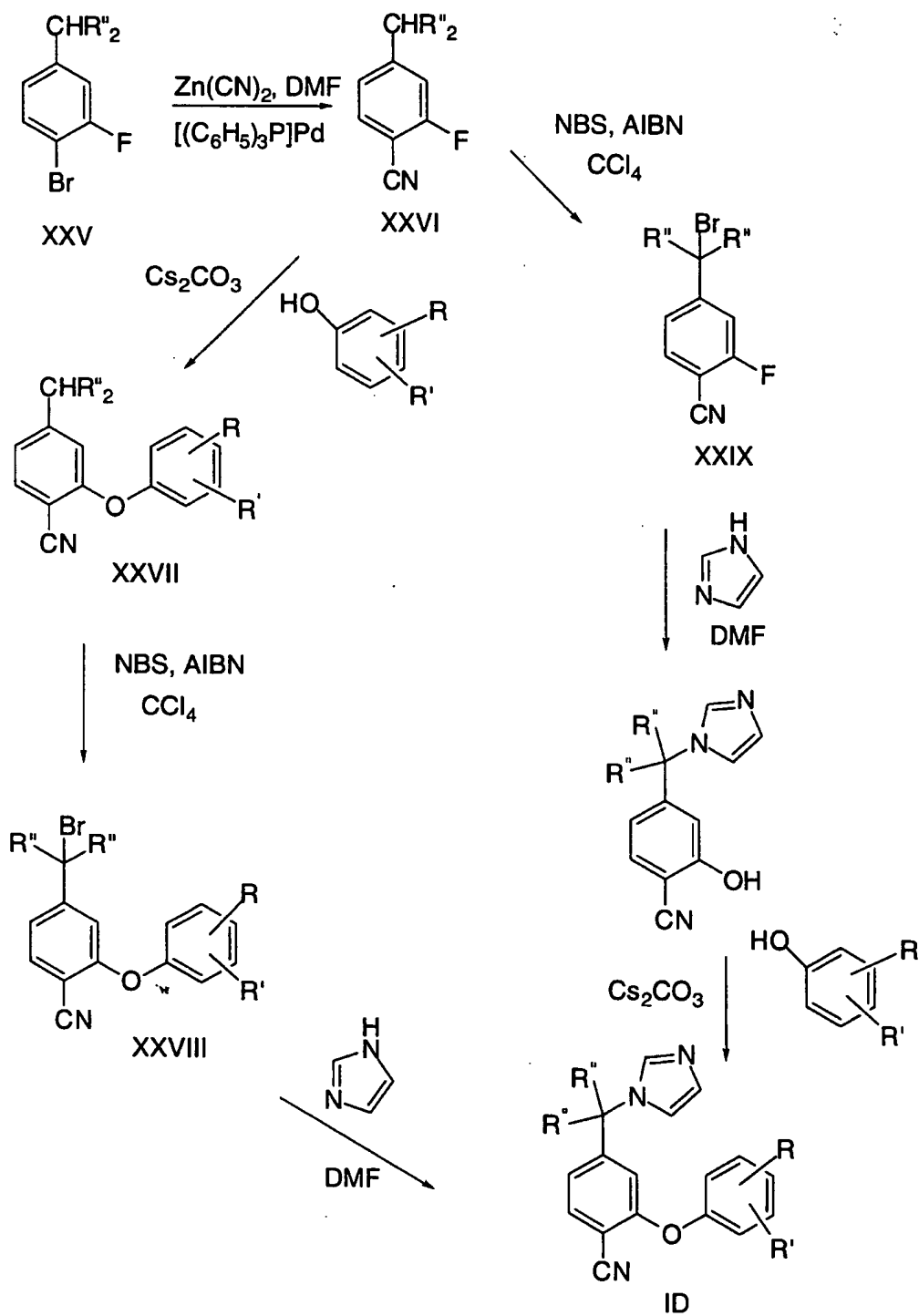


SCHEME 4

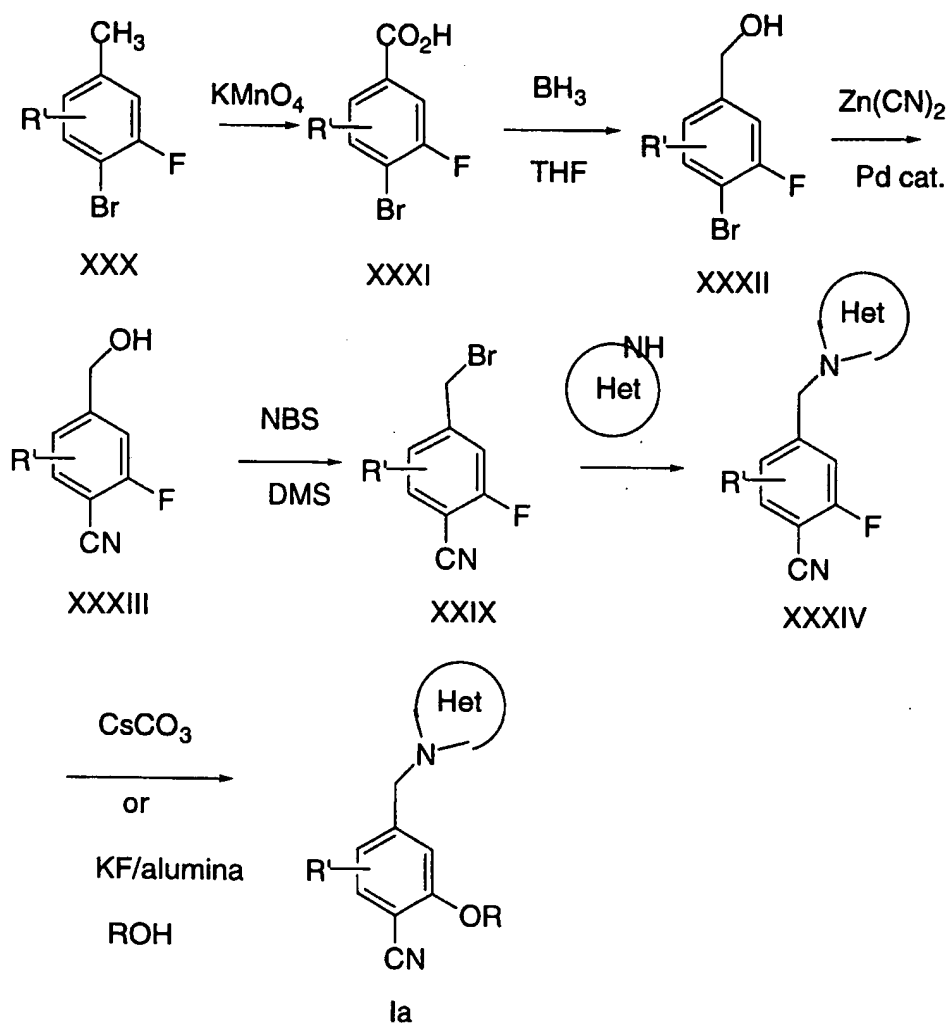
## SCHEME 5

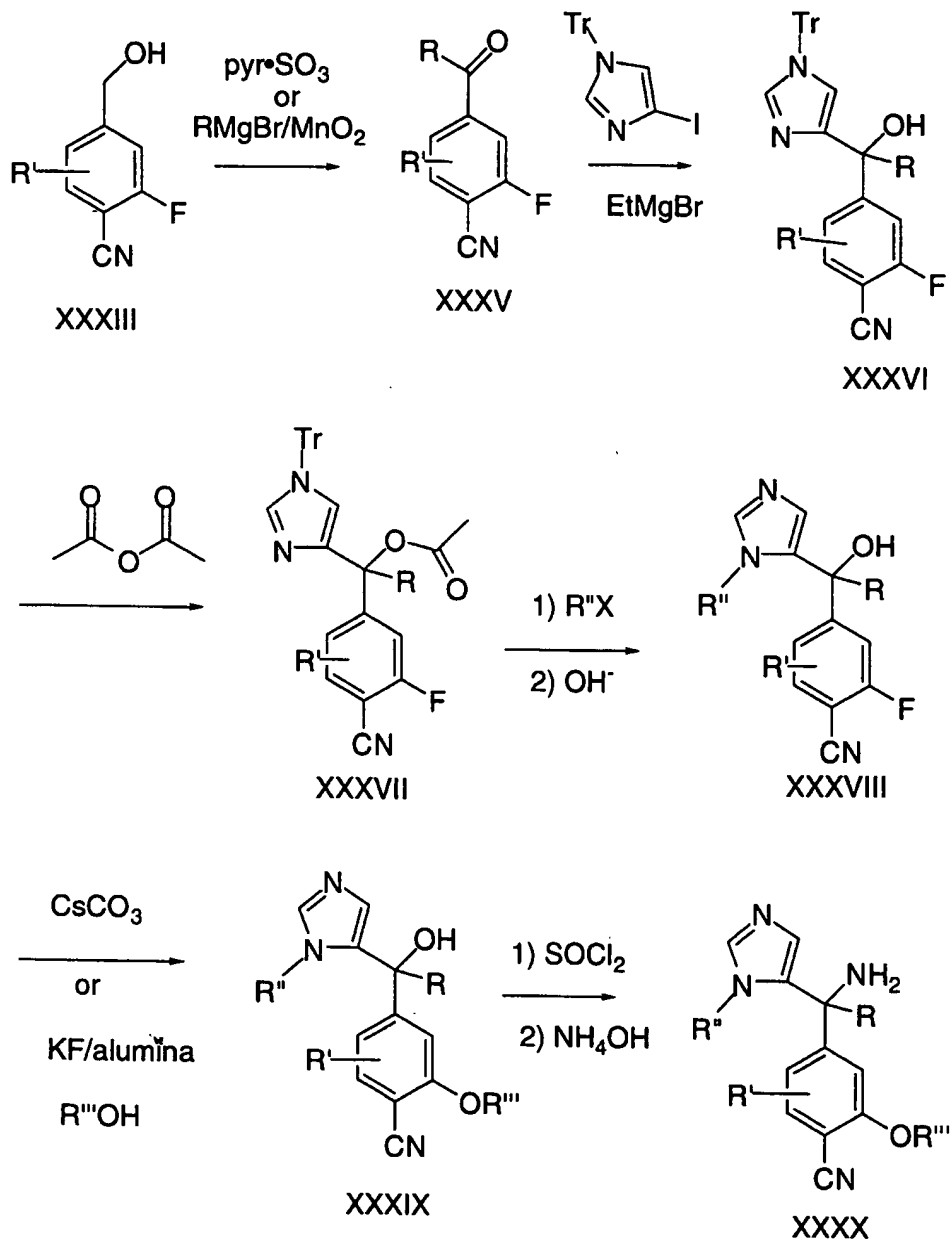


## SCHEME 6

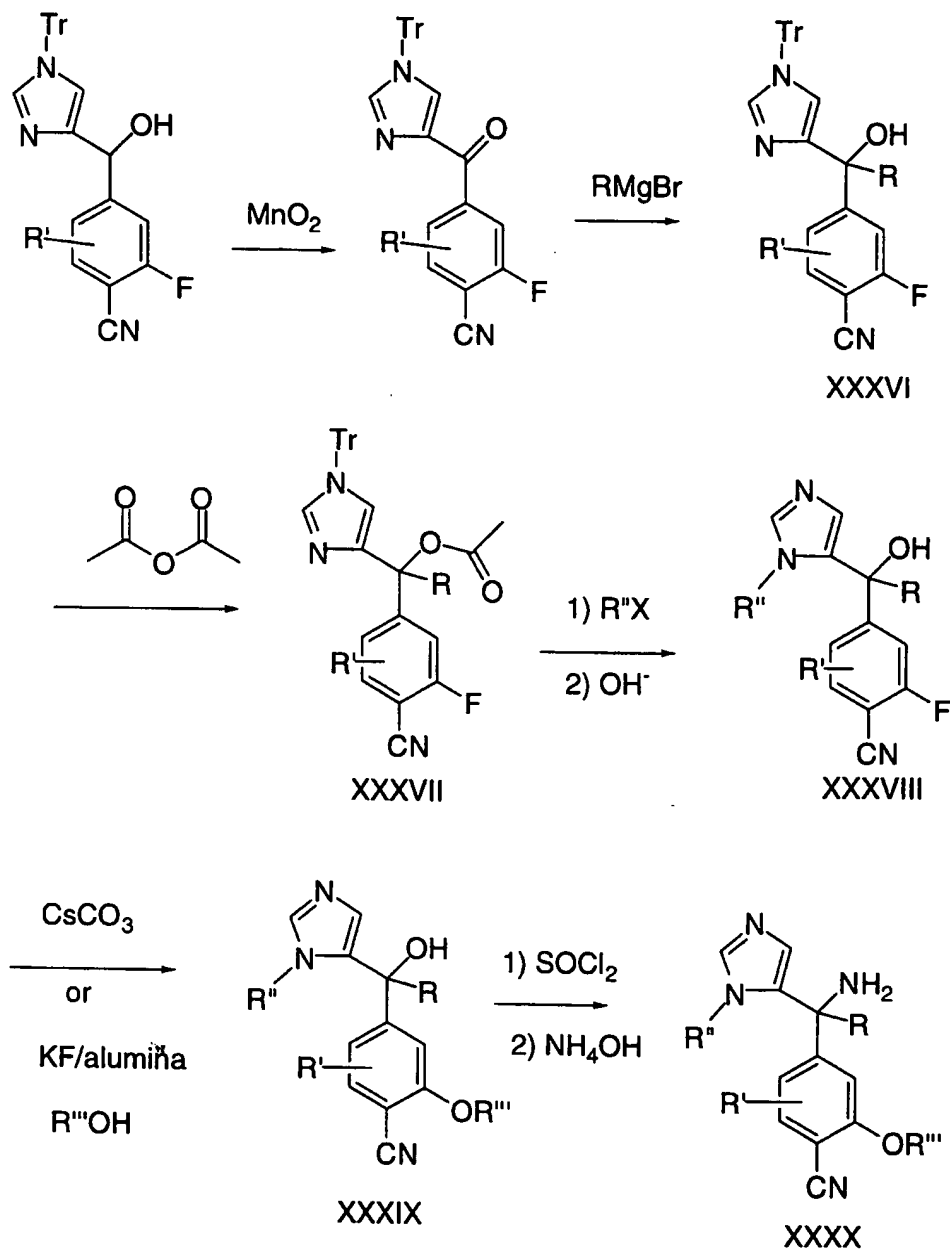


## SCHEME 7



**SCHEME 8**

## SCHEME 9



In the above Schemes, it is understood that

R independently represents R<sup>1c</sup> or its protected precursors thereof;

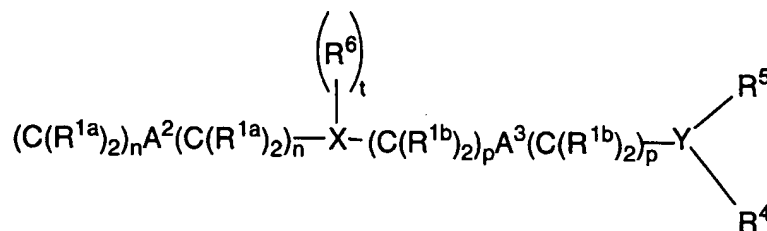
5

R' independently represents R<sup>3</sup> or its protected precursors thereof;

10

R'' independently represents R<sup>13</sup> or its protected precursors thereof;

R''' independently represents the following moiety:



15

In a preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of this instant invention are selective inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase. A compound is considered a selective inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase, for example, when its *in vitro* farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitory activity, as assessed by the assay described in Example 29, is at least 100 times greater than the *in vitro* activity of the same compound against geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I in the assay described in Example 30. Preferably, a selective compound exhibits at least 1000 times greater activity against one of the enzymatic activities when comparing geranylgeranyl-protein transferase-type I inhibition and farnesyl-protein transferase inhibition.

20

In another preferred embodiment of the instant invention the compounds of this instant invention are dual inhibitors of farnesyl-protein transferase and geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I. Such



a dual inhibitor will exhibit certain characteristics when assessed in *in vitro* assays, which are dependent on the type of assay employed.

In a SEAP assay, such as described in Example 33, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) that is less than about 12 μM against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) against K4B-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells which is more than about 5 times lower than the inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) against Myr-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells. Also more preferably, in a SEAP assay, the dual inhibitor compound has an inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) that is less than about 10 nM against H-Ras dependent activation of MAP kinases in cells.

In a GGTase plus anion assay, such as described in Example 30, it is preferred that the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) that is less than about 5 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAAX<sup>G</sup> motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a geranylgeranyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate comprising a CAAX<sup>G</sup> motif by geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I in the presence of a modulating anion. Preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) in the *in vitro* assay as described in Example 29 that is less than about 1 μM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX<sup>F</sup> motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. More preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) that is less than about 100 nM against transfer of a farnesyl residue to a protein or peptide substrate, comprising a CAAX<sup>F</sup> motif, by farnesyl-protein transferase. Also preferably, the dual inhibitor compound has an *in vitro* inhibitory activity (IC<sub>50</sub>) in the *in vitro* assay as described in Example 32, that is less than about 100 nM against the anchorage independent growth of H-ras-transformed mammalian fibroblasts.

The protein or peptide substrate utilized in the instant assay may incorporate any CAAX motif that is geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. The term "CAAX<sup>G</sup>" will refer to such motifs that may be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. It is understood that some of the

5 "CAAX<sup>G</sup>" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. In particular such "CAAX<sup>G</sup>" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in parentheses): CVIM (K4B-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 1), CVLL (mutated H-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 2), CVVM (N-Ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 3), CIIM (K4A-Ras)

10 (SEQ.ID.NO.: 4), CLLL (Rap-1A) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 5), CQLL (Rap-1B) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 6), CSIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 7), CAIM (SEQ.ID.NO.: 8), CKVL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 9), and CLIM (PFX) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 10). Preferably, the CAAX motif is CVIM.

As used herein, the term "CAAX<sup>F</sup>" is used to designate a

15 protein or peptide substrate that incorporates four amino acid C-terminus motif that is farnesylated by farnesyl-protein transferase. It is understood that certain of the "CAAX<sup>F</sup>" containing protein or peptide substrates may also be geranylgeranylated by GGTase-I. In particular such "CAAX<sup>F</sup>" motifs include (the corresponding human protein is in

20 parentheses): CVLS (H-ras) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 11), CVIM (K4B-Ras) and CVVM (N-Ras).

The instant compounds are useful as pharmaceutical agents for mammals, especially for humans. These compounds may be administered to patients for use in the treatment of cancer. Examples

25 of the type of cancer which may be treated with the compounds of this invention include, but are not limited to, colorectal carcinoma, exocrine pancreatic carcinoma, myeloid leukemias and neurological tumors. Such tumors may arise by mutations in the *ras* genes themselves, mutations in the proteins that can regulate Ras activity (i.e.,

30 neurofibromin (NF-1), neu, src, abl, lck, fyn) or by other mechanisms.

The compounds of the instant invention inhibit a prenyl-protein transferase and, in particular, the farnesylation of the oncogene protein Ras. The instant compounds may also inhibit tumor

angiogenesis, thereby affecting the growth of tumors (J. Rak et al. *Cancer Research*, 55: 4575-4580 (1995)). Such anti-angiogenesis properties of the instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain forms of vision deficit related to retinal vascularization.

5           The compounds of this invention are also useful for inhibiting other proliferative diseases, both benign and malignant, wherein Ras proteins are aberrantly activated as a result of oncogenic mutation in other genes (i.e., the Ras gene itself is not activated by mutation to an oncogenic form) with said inhibition being accomplished  
10 by the administration of an effective amount of the compounds of the invention to a mammal in need of such treatment. For example, a component of NF-1 is a benign proliferative disorder.

          The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment of certain viral infections, in particular in the treatment of hepatitis  
15 delta and related viruses (J.S. Glenn et al. *Science*, 256:1331-1333 (1992)).

          The compounds of the instant invention are also useful in the prevention of restenosis after percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty by inhibiting neointimal formation (C. Indolfi et al. *Nature medicine*, 1:541-545(1995)).

20           The instant compounds may also be useful in the treatment and prevention of polycystic kidney disease (D.L. Schaffner et al. *American Journal of Pathology*, 142:1051-1060 (1993) and B. Cowley, Jr. et al. *FASEB Journal*, 2:A3160 (1988)).

          The instant compounds may also be useful for the  
25 treatment of fungal infections.

          The instant compounds may also be useful as inhibitors of proliferation of vascular smooth muscle cells and therefore useful in the prevention and therapy of arteriosclerosis and diabetic vascular pathologies.

30           The compounds of this invention may be administered to mammals, preferably humans, either alone or, preferably, in combination with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or diluents, in a pharmaceutical composition, according to standard pharmaceutical practice. The compounds can be administered orally or  
35 parenterally, including the intravenous, intramuscular,

intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration.

The pharmaceutical compositions containing the active ingredient may be in a form suitable for oral use, for example, as tablets, troches, lozenges, aqueous or oily suspensions, dispersible powders or granules, emulsions, hard or soft capsules, or syrups or elixirs. Compositions intended for oral use may be prepared according to any method known to the art for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions and such compositions may contain one or more agents selected from the group consisting of sweetening agents, flavoring agents, coloring agents and preserving agents in order to provide pharmaceutically elegant and palatable preparations. Tablets contain the active ingredient in admixture with non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable excipients which are suitable for the manufacture of tablets. These excipients may be for example, inert diluents, such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate or sodium phosphate; granulating and disintegrating agents, for example, corn starch, or alginic acid; binding agents, for example starch, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents, for example, magnesium stearate, stearic acid or talc. The tablets may be uncoated or they may be coated by known techniques to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate may be employed.

Formulations for oral use may also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent; for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example peanut oil, liquid paraffin, or olive oil.

Aqueous suspensions contain the active material in admixture with excipients suitable for the manufacture of aqueous suspensions. Such excipients are suspending agents, for example sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, sodium alginate, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone, gum tragacanth and

gum acacia; dispersing or wetting agents may be a naturally-occurring phosphatide, for example lecithin, or condensation products of an alkylene oxide with fatty acids, for example polyoxyethylene stearate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with long chain aliphatic  
5 alcohols, for example heptadecaethylene-oxycetanol, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and a hexitol such as polyoxyethylene sorbitol monooleate, or condensation products of ethylene oxide with partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol anhydrides, for example polyethylene sorbitan  
10 monooleate. The aqueous suspensions may also contain one or more preservatives, for example ethyl, or n-propyl p-hydroxybenzoate, one or more coloring agents, one or more flavoring agents, and one or more sweetening agents, such as sucrose, saccharin or aspartame.

Oily suspensions may be formulated by suspending the  
15 active ingredient in a vegetable oil, for example arachis oil, olive oil, sesame oil or coconut oil, or in mineral oil such as liquid paraffin. The oily suspensions may contain a thickening agent, for example beeswax, hard paraffin or cetyl alcohol. Sweetening agents such as those set forth above, and flavoring agents may be added to provide a palatable oral  
20 preparation. These compositions may be preserved by the addition of an anti-oxidant such as ascorbic acid.

Dispersible powders and granules suitable for preparation of an aqueous suspension by the addition of water provide the active ingredient in admixture with a dispersing or wetting agent, suspending  
25 agent and one or more preservatives. Suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents are exemplified by those already mentioned above. Additional excipients, for example sweetening, flavoring and coloring agents, may also be present.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may also  
30 be in the form of an oil-in-water emulsions. The oily phase may be a vegetable oil, for example olive oil or arachis oil, or a mineral oil, for example liquid paraffin or mixtures of these. Suitable emulsifying agents may be naturally-occurring phosphatides, for example soy beans, lecithin, and esters or partial esters derived from fatty acids and hexitol  
35 anhydrides, for example sorbitan monooleate, and condensation

products of the said partial esters with ethylene oxide, for example polyoxyethylene sorbitan monooleate. The emulsions may also contain sweetening and flavouring agents.

5        Syrups and elixirs may be formulated with sweetening agents, for example glycerol, propylene glycol, sorbitol or sucrose. Such formulations may also contain a demulcent, a preservative and flavoring and coloring agents.

10        The pharmaceutical compositions may be in the form of a sterile injectable aqueous or oleagenous suspension. This suspension may be formulated according to the known art using those suitable dispersing or wetting agents and suspending agents which have been mentioned above. The sterile injectable preparation may also be a sterile injectable solution or suspension in a non-toxic parenterally-acceptable diluent or solvent, for example as a solution in 1,3-butane diol. Among  
15        the acceptable vehicles and solvents that may be employed are water, Ringer's solution and isotonic sodium chloride solution. In addition, sterile, fixed oils are conventionally employed as a solvent or suspending medium. For this purpose any bland fixed oil may be employed including synthetic mono- or diglycerides. In addition, fatty acids such  
20        as oleic acid find use in the preparation of injectables.

      The injectable suspensions or solutions may be introduced into a patient's blood-stream by local bolus injection. Alternatively, it may be advantageous to administer the suspensions or solution in such a way as to maintain a constant circulating concentration of the instant  
25        compound. In order to maintain such a constant concentration, a continuous intravenous delivery device may be utilized. An example of such a device is the Deltec CADD-PLUS™ model 5400 intravenous pump.

30        Compounds of Formula A may also be administered in the form of a suppositories for rectal administration of the drug. These compositions can be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperatures but liquid at the rectal temperature and will therefore melt in the rectum to release the drug. Such materials are cocoa butter and polyethylene glycols.

For topical use, creams, ointments, jellies, solutions or suspensions, etc., containing the compound of Formula A are employed. (For purposes of this application, topical application shall include mouth washes and gargles.)

5           The compounds for the present invention can be administered in intranasal form via topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles, or via transdermal routes, using those forms of transdermal skin patches well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. To be  
10 administered in the form of a transdermal delivery system, the dosage administration will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen. Compounds of the present invention may also be delivered as a suppository employing bases such as cocoa  
15 butter, glycerinated gelatin, hydrogenated vegetable oils, mixtures of polyethylene glycols of various molecular weights and fatty acid esters of polyethylene glycol.

As used herein, the term "composition" is intended to encompass a product comprising the specified ingredients in the specific amounts, as well as any product which results, directly or  
20 indirectly, from combination of the specific ingredients in the specified amounts.

When a compound according to this invention is administered into a human subject, the daily dosage will normally be determined by the prescribing physician with the dosage generally  
25 varying according to the age, weight, sex and response of the individual patient, as well as the severity of the patient's symptoms.

In one exemplary application, a suitable amount of compound is administered to a mammal undergoing treatment for cancer. Administration occurs in an amount between about 0.1 mg/kg  
30 of body weight to about 60 mg/kg of body weight per day, preferably of between 0.5 mg/kg of body weight to about 40 mg/kg of body weight per day.

The compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known therapeutic agents that are  
35 selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is

being treated. For example, the compounds of the instant invention may also be co-administered with other well known cancer therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is being treated. Included in such combinations of therapeutic agents are combinations of the instant prenyl-protein transferase inhibitors and an antineoplastic agent. It is also understood that such a combination of antineoplastic agent and inhibitor of a prenyl-protein transferase may be used in conjunction with other methods of treating cancer and/or tumors, including radiation therapy and surgery.

Examples of an antineoplastic agent include, in general, microtubule-stabilizing agents ( such as paclitaxel (also known as Taxol®), docetaxel (also known as Taxotere®), epothilone A, epothilone B, desoxyepothilone A, desoxyepothilone B or their derivatives); microtubule-disruptor agents; alkylating agents, anti-metabolites; epidophyllotoxin; an antineoplastic enzyme; a topoisomerase inhibitor; procarbazine; mitoxantrone; platinum coordination complexes; biological response modifiers and growth inhibitors; hormonal/anti-hormonal therapeutic agents and haematopoietic growth factors.

Example classes of antineoplastic agents include, for example, the anthracycline family of drugs, the vinca drugs, the mitomycins, the bleomycins, the cytotoxic nucleosides, the taxanes, the epothilones, discodermolide, the pteridine family of drugs, diynenes and the podophyllotoxins. Particularly useful members of those classes include, for example, doxorubicin, carminomycin, daunorubicin, aminopterin, methotrexate, methopterin, dichloro-methotrexate, mitomycin C, porfiromycin, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, gemcitabine, cytosine arabinoside, podophyllotoxin or podo-phyllotoxin derivatives such as etoposide, etoposide phosphate or teniposide, melphalan, vinblastine, vincristine, leurosine, vindesine, leurosine, paclitaxel and the like. Other useful antineoplastic agents include estramustine, cisplatin, carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, bleomycin, tamoxifen, ifosamide, melphalan, hexamethyl melamine, thiotepa, cytarabin, idatrexate, trimetrexate, dacarbazine, L-asparaginase,



camptothecin, CPT-11, topotecan, ara-C, bicalutamide, flutamide, leuprolide, pyridobenzoindole derivatives, interferons and interleukins.

The preferred class of antineoplastic agents is the taxanes and the preferred antineoplastic agent is paclitaxel.

5           Radiation therapy, including x-rays or gamma rays which are delivered from either an externally applied beam or by implantation of tiny radioactive sources, may also be used in combination with the instant inhibitor of a prenyl-protein transferase alone to treat cancer.

10           Additionally, compounds of the instant invention may also be useful as radiation sensitizers, as described in WO 97/38697, published on October 23, 1997, and herein incorporated by reference.

          The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with other inhibitors of parts of the signaling pathway that links cell surface growth factor receptors to nuclear signals initiating cellular proliferation. Thus, the instant compounds may be utilized in combination with farnesyl pyrophosphate competitive inhibitors of the activity of farnesyl-protein transferase or in combination with a compound which has Raf antagonist activity. The instant compounds may also be co-administered with compounds that are selective inhibitors of geranylgeranyl protein transferase. In particular, if the compound of the instant invention is a selective inhibitor of farnesyl-protein transferase, co-administered with a compound(s) that is a selective inhibitor of geranylgeranyl protein transferase may provide the therapeutic effect of administration of a dual inhibitor as described hereinabove, and thus offer certain advantages over administration of only the compound of the instant invention.

20           In particular, the compounds disclosed in the following patents and publications may be useful as farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor component of the instant composition: U.S. Ser. Nos. 08/254,228 and 08/435,047. Those patents and publications are incorporated herein by reference.

30           In practicing methods of this invention, which comprise administering, simultaneously or sequentially or in any order, two or more of a protein substrate-competitive inhibitor and a farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor, such administration can be orally

or parenterally, including intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, rectal and topical routes of administration. It is preferred that such administration be orally. It is more preferred that such administration be orally and simultaneously. When the protein  
5 substrate-competitive inhibitor and farnesyl pyrophosphate-competitive inhibitor are administered sequentially, the administration of each can be by the same method or by different methods.

The instant compounds may also be useful in combination with an integrin antagonist for the treatment of cancer, as described in  
10 U.S. Ser. No. 09/055,487, filed April 6, 1998, which is incorporated herein by reference.

As used herein the term an integrin antagonist refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to an integrin(s) that is involved in the  
15 regulation of angiogenesis, or in the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells. In particular, the term refers to compounds which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the  $\alpha v \beta 3$  integrin, which selectively antagonize, inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to the  $\alpha v \beta 5$  integrin, which antagonize,  
20 inhibit or counteract binding of a physiological ligand to both the  $\alpha v \beta 3$  integrin and the  $\alpha v \beta 5$  integrin, or which antagonize, inhibit or counteract the activity of the particular integrin(s) expressed on capillary endothelial cells. The term also refers to antagonists of the  $\alpha 1 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 2 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 5 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 6 \beta 1$  and  $\alpha 6 \beta 4$  integrins. The term also refers to  
25 antagonists of any combination of  $\alpha v \beta 3$  integrin,  $\alpha v \beta 5$  integrin,  $\alpha 1 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 2 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 5 \beta 1$ ,  $\alpha 6 \beta 1$  and  $\alpha 6 \beta 4$  integrins. The instant compounds may also be useful with other agents that inhibit angiogenesis and thereby inhibit the growth and invasiveness of tumor cells, including, but not limited to angiostatin and endostatin.

30 Similarly, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with agents that are effective in the treatment and prevention of NF-1, restenosis, polycystic kidney disease, infections of hepatitis delta and related viruses and fungal infections.

If formulated as a fixed dose, such combination products employ the combinations of this invention within the dosage range described below and the other pharmaceutically active agent(s) within its approved dosage range. Combinations of the instant invention may  
5 alternatively be used sequentially with known pharmaceutically acceptable agent(s) when a multiple combination formulation is inappropriate.

For oral use of a chemotherapeutic compound according to  
10 this invention, the selected compound may be administered, for example, in the form of tablets or capsules, or as an aqueous solution or suspension. In the case of tablets for oral use, carriers which are commonly used include lactose and corn starch, and lubricating agents, such as magnesium stearate, are commonly added. For oral  
15 administration in capsule form, useful diluents include lactose and dried corn starch. When aqueous suspensions are required for oral use, the active ingredient is combined with emulsifying and suspending agents. If desired, certain sweetening and/or flavoring agents may be added. For intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous and  
20 intravenous use, sterile solutions of the active ingredient are usually prepared, and the pH of the solutions should be suitably adjusted and buffered. For intravenous use, the total concentration of solutes should be controlled in order to render the preparation isotonic.

The compounds of the instant invention may also be co-  
25 administered with other well-known therapeutic agents that are selected for their particular usefulness against the condition that is being treated. For example, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with known anti-cancer and cytotoxic agents. Similarly, the instant compounds may be useful in combination with agents that  
30 are effective in the treatment and prevention of NF-1, restinosis, polycystic kidney disease, infections of hepatitis delta and related viruses and fungal infections.

If formulated as a fixed dose, such combination products employ the compounds of this invention within the dosage range  
35 described below and the other pharmaceutically active agent(s) within

its approved dosage range. Compounds of the instant invention may alternatively be used sequentially with known pharmaceutically acceptable agent(s) when a combination formulation is inappropriate.

5       The present invention also encompasses a pharmaceutical composition useful in the treatment of cancer, comprising the administration of a therapeutically effective amount of the compounds of this invention, with or without pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents. Suitable compositions of this invention include aqueous solutions comprising compounds of this invention and pharmacolo-  
10       gically acceptable carriers, e.g., saline, at a pH level, e.g., 7.4. The solutions may be introduced into a patient's intramuscular blood-stream by local bolus injection.

      The compounds of the instant invention are also useful as a component in an assay to rapidly determine the presence and  
15       quantity of farnesyl-protein transferase (FPTase) in a composition. Thus the composition to be tested may be divided and the two portions contacted with mixtures which comprise a known substrate of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate and, in one of the mixtures, a  
20       compound of the instant invention. After the assay mixtures are incubated for an sufficient period of time, well known in the art, to allow the FPTase to farnesylate the substrate, the chemical content of the assay mixtures may be determined by well known immunological, radiochemical or chromatographic techniques.  
25       Because the compounds of the instant invention are selective inhibitors of FPTase, absence or quantitative reduction of the amount of substrate in the assay mixture without the compound of the instant invention relative to the presence of the unchanged substrate in the assay containing the instant compound is indicative of the presence  
30       of FPTase in the composition to be tested.

      It would be readily apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art that such an assay as described above would be useful in identifying tissue samples which contain farnesyl-protein transferase and quantitating the enzyme. Thus, potent inhibitor compounds of the  
35       instant invention may be used in an active site titration assay to

determine the quantity of enzyme in the sample. A series of samples composed of aliquots of a tissue extract containing an unknown amount of farnesyl-protein transferase, an excess amount of a known substrate of FPTase (for example a tetrapeptide having a cysteine at the amine terminus) and farnesyl pyrophosphate are incubated for an appropriate period of time in the presence of varying concentrations of a compound of the instant invention. The concentration of a sufficiently potent inhibitor (i.e., one that has a  $K_i$  substantially smaller than the concentration of enzyme in the assay vessel) required to inhibit the enzymatic activity of the sample by 50% is approximately equal to half of the concentration of the enzyme in that particular sample.

### EXAMPLES

Examples provided are intended to assist in a further understanding of the invention. Particular materials employed, species and conditions are intended to be further illustrative of the invention and not limitative of the reasonable scope thereof.

#### EXAMPLE 1

Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of phenyl 2-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate  
A solution of  $\text{NaNO}_2$  (1.33 g, 19.3 mmol) in 10 mL water was added to a solution of phenyl-4-amino-2-hydroxybenzoate (4.02 g, 17.6 mmol) in 3N HCl (35 mL) and THF (10 mL) at 0°C. The resulting yellow solution was stirred for 30 minutes then KI (8.74 g, 52.7 mmol) in water (13 mL) was added. After 10 minutes, the dark brown/red slurry was poured into EtOAc, washed twice with water then with aqueous sodium bisulfite and brine. The dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) solution was filtered and concentrated to give a dark oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 15:1) gave the title compound as a white solid which

contained approximately 15% of an unidentified impurity. This material was used as such in the next step.

Step B:      Preparation of phenyl 4-iodo-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)  
5                    benzoate

To a solution of a phenol, as described in Step A, in 10 mL of dimethyl formamide (DMF) was added 4-phenylbenzyl iodide (292 mg, 0.99 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (442 mg, 1.35 mmol) and the suspension was stirred for 16 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was diluted with  
10 EtOAc, extracted with water (3X), washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>; hexane:EtOAc 20:1) to provide an oil which crystallized from ether:hexane 1:10 to give the title compound as a white  
solid.  
15 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 5.23 (2H, s), 7.17 (2H, m), 7.25 (1H, m), 7.3-7.6 (13H, m), 7.75 (1H, d).

Step C:      Preparation of 4-iodo-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy) benzylalcohol

To a solution of an ester, as described in Step B, in 5 mL of  
20 THF was added lithium borohydride (28 mg, 1.27 mmol) and heated at reflux for 30 minutes. After this time, the reaction mixture was poured into EtOAc and extracted with 1N HCl, then water, and then brine. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound as a white solid :  
25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.17 (1H, t), 4.70 (2H, d), 5.12 (2H, s), 7.07 (1H, d), 7.3-7.7 (11H, m).

Step D:      Preparation of 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)  
30                    benzylalcohol

A solution of an iodide, as described in Step C, and Zn(CN)<sub>2</sub> (49 mg, 0.42 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was degassed with argon for 15 minutes. Pd(Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub> (35 mg, 0.03 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc (2X). The organic layers were washed with 1N  
35 HCl, water and then brine. They were then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and the

solvent removed. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.18 (1H, t), 4.81 (2H, d), 5.17 (2H, s), 7.19 (1H, d), 7.3-7.65(11H, m)

5

Step E: Preparation of methanesulfonic acid 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-cyanobenzyl ester

A solution of an alcohol, as described in Step D, in dichloromethane (4 mL) at room temperature, was treated sequentially with  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (81  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.59 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (32  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.41 mmol). After 1 hr, a further  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (81  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.59 mmol) and methanesulfonyl chloride (32  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.41 mmol) was added and stirred for another hour. The solution was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc, washed with brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and evaporated to give a solid. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) gave the title compound as a solid.  $R_f$  (silica): 0.37 (hexane:EtOAc 2:1).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.95 (3H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 5.35 (2H, s), 7.2-7.7 (12H, m).

Step F: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

A solution of a mesylate, as described in Step E and imidazole (45 mg, 0.66 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into a saturate  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with water and then brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and evaporated to give a solid. Column chromatography (silica gel; 2% MeOH in  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) gave an oil which crystallized from ether to afford the title compound.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  5.16 (2H, s), 5.20 (2H, s), 6.89 (1H, t), 7.00 (1H, d), 7.09 (1H, s), 7.24 (2H, m), 7.35-7.5 (5H, m), 7.53 (1H, s), 7.6-7.68 (4H, m).

Analysis calculated for  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{19}\text{N}_3\text{O}$ :

C, 78.88; H, 5.24; N, 11.50;

Found: C, 78.67; H, 5.54; N, 11.31.

35

## EXAMPLE 2

### Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile hydrochloride

5

#### Step A: Preparation of phenyl 4-cyano-2-hydroxybenzoate

A solution of phenyl 2-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate, as described in Example 1, Step A, (2.38 g, 7.0 mmol) and  $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$  (575 mg, 4.9 mmol) in DMF was degassed with argon for 25 minutes.  $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$  (404 mg, 0.35 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc (2X), washed with water then brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and the solvent removed. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 9:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.18-7.28 (3H, m), 7.35 (2H, m), 7.48 (2H, m), 8.19 (1H, d), 10.67 (1H, s).

#### Step B: Preparation of phenyl 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy) benzoate

20 To a solution of a phenol, as described in Step A, in 5 mL of dimethyl formamide (DMF) was added biphenyl-4-ylethyl iodide (170 mg, 0.55 mmol) and  $\text{Cs}_2\text{CO}_3$  (246 mg, 0.75 mmol). The suspension was stirred for 16 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc, extracted with water (3X), washed with brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by flash chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ; hexane:EtOAc 9:1 then 4:1) to provide the title compound.

25 Rf (silica): 0.22 (hexane:EtOAc 9:1).

#### Step C: Preparation of 4-cyano-2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy) benzyl alcohol

30 To a solution of an ester, as described in Step B, in 3 mL of THF was added lithium borohydride (9.6 mg, 0.44 mmol) and heated at reflux for 1 hr. After this time, the reaction mixture was poured into EtOAc and extracted with 1N HCl, then water, then brine. The organic

35



layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated *in vacuo* to afford the title compound as an oil. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>; hexane:EtOAc 2:1) to provide the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.16 (1H, t), 3.17 (2H, t), 4.25 (2H, t), 4.65 (1H, d), 7.06 (1H, d), 7.24 (1H, dd), 7.3-7.45 (6H, m), 7.55-7.6 (4H, m).

Step D: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-bromomethyl-benzonitrile

A mixture of an alcohol, as described in Step C, carbon tetrabromide (68 mg, 0.205 mmol) and PPh<sub>3</sub> (54 mg, 0.205 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was stirred for 16 hr. More carbon tetrabromide (68 mg, 0.205 mmol) and PPh<sub>3</sub> (54 mg, 0.205 mmol) were added and stirring continued for 24 hr. The solution was diluted with ether, filtered and the solvent concentrated. Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 9:1) afforded the title compound. R<sub>f</sub> (silica): 0.78 (hexane:EtOAc 2:1).

Step E: Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

A solution of a bromide, as described in Step D, and imidazole (26 mg, 0.38 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into saturate NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with water then brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated to give a solid. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 1:1 then 2% MeOH in CHCl<sub>3</sub>) gave an oil which was treated with 0.5 mL 1N HCl in ether to afford (after removal of the ether) the title compound as a solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 3.18 (2H, t), 4.44 (2H, t), 5.38 (2H, s), 7.2-7.5 (10H, m), 7.5-7.7 (4H, m), 8.62 (1H, s).

EXAMPLE 3Preparation of 3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

- 5                   Following the procedure described in Example 2, Steps A to F, but using biphenyl-3-ylmethyl bromide, as described in Step B, as starting material, the title compound was obtained as a solid.  
1H NMR(CD3OD) d 5.27 (2H, s), 5.52 (2H, s), 7.3-7.7 (14H, m), 8.85 (1H, s).

10                   EXAMPLE 4

Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 15   Step A:       Preparation of methyl 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoate  
HCl (g) was bubbled through a solution of 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoic acid (7 g, 54.8 mmol) in MeOH (450 mL) until saturated then the mixture was heated at 70°C for 16 hr. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo, the residue taken up in EtOAc, washed with  
20   saturated NaHCO3 then brine and dried (MgSO4). Removal of the solvent yielded the title compound as a brown solid.  
1H NMR(CD3OD) d 3.80 (3H, s), 6.66 (1H, d), 7.32 (1H, dd), 7.37 (1H, dd).

- 25   Step B:       Preparation of methyl 3-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate  
A solution of NaNO2 (15.89 g, 0.092 mol) in water (30 mL) was added to a solution of methyl 4-amino-3-hydroxybenzoate (14.00 g, 0.084 mol) in 3N HCl (120 mL) and THF (20 mL) at 0°C. The resulting dark red solution was stirred for 30 minutes then KI (41.68 g, 2.51 mol) in water (30 mL) was added. After 10 minutes, the dark brown/red  
30   slurry was poured into EtOAc, washed twice with water then with aqueous sodium bisulfite and brine. The dried (MgSO4) solution was filtered and concentrated to give a dark oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 15:1) gave the title compound.

Step C: Preparation of methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate

A solution of methyl 3-hydroxy-4-iodobenzoate (2.38 g, 7.0 mmol) (as described in Step B) and  $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$  (0.575 g, 4.9 mmol) in DMF was degassed with argon for 25 minutes.  $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$  (0.404 g, 0.35

- 5 mmol) was added and the mixture heated to 80°C for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 1N HCl and extracted with EtOAc (2X), washed with water then brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ) and the solvent removed.

Chromatography of the residue (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 9:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

- 10  $^1\text{H}$  NMR( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  3.95 (3H, s), 6.54 (1H, br s), 7.60 (1H, d), 7.65 (1H, d), 7.570 (1H, s).

Step D: Preparation of 2-Hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

Methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate (as described in Example 4, Step C) (0.50 g, 2.82 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (30 mL), treated with  $\text{LiBH}_4$  (2.0M solution in THF) (5.64 mL, 11.28 mmol) and heated at reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated, then partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and 1N HCl (50 mL), the aqueous layer extracted with additional EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound.

- 20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  7.45 (1H, d,  $J = 8$  Hz), 6.98 (1H, d,  $J = 1$  Hz), 6.89 (1H, dd,  $J = 1, 8$ , Hz), 4.58 (2H, s).

25 Step E: Preparation of 4-Bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile

2-Hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (0.20 g, 1.34 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL) -  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (5 mL) and treated with triphenylphosphine (0.53 g, 2.01 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (0.67 g, 2.01 mmol) at ambient temperature with stirring. After 2 h the reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) -  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (100 mL), the organic layer separated, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), and filtered to give the title compound after silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/ hexane to 25%EtOAc/ hexane).

- 30  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  7.45 (1H, d,  $J = 8$  Hz), 6.94 (1H, s), 6.90 (1H, d,  $J = 8$ , Hz), 4.40 (2H, s).

Step F: Preparation of 2-Hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 4-Bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile (0.22 g, 1.05 mmol) and imidazole (0.36 g, 5.23 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (10 mL) with stirring at ambient temperature. After stirring for 18 h the reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by silica gel chromatography eluting with 2% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to 5% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) δ 11.11 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, s), 6.95 (1H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 6.69 (1H, s), 5.23 (2H, s).

Step G: Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- Following the procedure described in Example 2, Step E but using 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Step F) and biphenyl-4-ylmethyl iodide as starting materials, the title compound was obtained as a solid.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 4.89 (2H, s), 5.28 (2H, s), 6.91 (1H, d), 7.06 (3H, m), 7.3-7.55 (5H, m), 7.6-7.66 (5H, m), 7.77 (1H, s).
- Analysis calculated for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O:
- C, 78.88; H, 5.24; N, 11.50;
- Found: C, 78.59; H, 5.31; N, 11.10.

EXAMPLE 5

Preparation of 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

- Following the procedure described in Example 4, Step A to D but using biphenyl-4-ylethyl iodide as the starting material in Step B, and treatment of the final product with 1N HCl in ether, the title compound was obtained as a solid.
- <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 3.13 (2H, t), 4.28 (2H, t), 4.90 (2H, s), 6.83 (1H, dd), 6.95 (1H, s), 7.00 (1H, t), 7.11 (1H, t), 7.30 (1H, m), 7.35-7.45 (4H, m), 7.5-7.6 (5H, m), 7.76 (1H, s).

### EXAMPLE 6

Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-  
5 5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine

Step A: Preparation of L-N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl homoserine lactone

To a solution of L-homoserine lactone hydrochloride (10 g, 72.7 mmol) and (Boc)<sub>2</sub>O (19.0 g, 87.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (200 mL)  
10 at 0°C was added Et<sub>3</sub>N (12.2 mL, 87.2 mmol) dropwise. The solution was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hr. The mixture was poured into 10% citric acid solution, extracted with EtOAc, washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, then brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated  
15 *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound as a white solid.  
Rf (silica): 0.58 (hexane:EtOAc 1:1).

Step B: Preparation of L-N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl homoserine lactol

To a solution of a lactone, as described in Step A, in THF  
20 (355 mL) at -78°C was added DIBAL-H (1.0M in THF; 146 mL, 146 mmol) dropwise. The solution was stirred at -78°C for 1 hr then EtOAc and sodium potassium tartrate solution were added and the resulting mixture stirred vigorously for 30 minutes. After extracting with EtOAc  
(4X) the combined organic layers were washed with brine and dried over  
25 MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Removal of the solvent yielded an oil which solidified on standing. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

Step C: Preparation of 3(S)-(N'-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-(N  
30 3-chlorophenylamino)-butanol

To a solution of a lactol, as described in Step B, and 3-chloroaniline (6.25 mL, 59.1 mmol) in dichloroethane (200 mL) at room temperature was added acetic acid (3.07 mL, 53.7 mmol) followed by Na(OAc)<sub>3</sub>BH (17.1 g, 80.5 mmol) and the mixture stirred for 2 hr.  
35 Saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution was added and the mixture extracted with

dichloromethane (3X), washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound as a white solid.

- 5 <sup>1</sup>H NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.45 (9H, s), 1.5 (1H, m), 1.90 (1H, m), 2.96 (1H, br s), 3.11 (1H, m), 3.24 (1H, m), 3.73 (2H, m), 4.05 (2H, m), 4.75 (1H, d), 6.48 (1H, dd), 6.58 (1H, t), 6.67 (1H, dd), 7.07 (1H, t).

10 Step D: Preparation of 3(S)-(N<sup>3</sup>-tert-butoxycarbonylamino)-4-(N-3-chlorophenyl-N-chloroacetyl)amino-butanol

- To a solution of an amine, as described in Step C, in EtOAc (120 mL) and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (120 mL) at 0°C was added chloroacetyl chloride (3.08 mL, 38.8 mL) dropwise. After 2 hr, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3X), washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and  
15 concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title product as a clear oil which was used as such.

20 Step E: Preparation of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-oxo-piperazine

- To a solution of a chloroacetamide, as described in Step D, in DMF (100 mL) at 0°C was added Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (27.75 g, 85.2 mmol) and the reaction was stirred for 6 hr. The solution was poured into EtOAc and saturated NH<sub>4</sub>Cl. Extracted with EtOAc (3X), washed with brine, dried and evaporated to give a yellow oil. Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 2:1 then 1:1 then pure EtOAc) afforded the title compound  
25 as a clear oil.

30 Step F: Preparation of 1-tert-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-methoxycarbonylphenoxy)ethyl]-5-oxo-piperazine

To a solution of 250 mg of methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate (1.42 mmol), as described in Example 4, Step C, and PPh<sub>3</sub> (465 mg, 1.77 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise a solution of the alcohol from Step E above (503 mg, 1.42 mmol) and DEAD (0.28 mL, 1.77 mmol) in

THF (5 mL). After stirring for 16 hr, the solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residue taken up in EtOAc. This was then washed with 10% citric acid solution, saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Filtration and removal of the solvent afforded an oil.

- 5 Column chromatography (silica gel; hexane:EtOAc 4:1) afforded the title compound as a clear oil.

10 Step G: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-hydroxymethylphenoxy)ethyl]-piperazine

Following the procedure described in Example 1, Step C but using an ester, as described in Step F above, as the starting material, the title compound was obtained.

FAB mass spectrum  $m/z$  = 472.21 (M+H requires 471.19)

15

Step H: Preparation of 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chloro-phenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-ethyl]-5-oxo-piperazine

20 Following the procedure described in Example 2, Steps D and E but using an alcohol, as described in Step G above, as the starting material, the title compound was obtained as a white solid.

FAB mass spectrum  $m/z$  = 522.19 (M+H requires 522.22).

25 Analysis calculated for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>3</sub>Cl•0.15CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:

C, 63.22; H, 6.09; N, 13.10;

Found: <sup>13</sup>C, 63.17; H, 5.88; N, 12.93.

### EXAMPLE 7

30

Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-methyl-benzonitrile

To a solution of 2-fluoro-4-methylbenzonitrile (356mg, 3.96mmol) and 3-chlorophenol(439 $\mu$ L, 4.16mmol) in 10mL of DMSO was added Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (2.58g, 7.92 mmol). The solution was heated at 80°C for 4h. The solution was diluted with EtOAc and was washed with Sat. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, and brine. The organics were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to give the title compound without further purification.

10      Step B:      Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-bromo-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

To a solution of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-methyl-benzonitrile (640 mg, 2.63 mmol), as described in Step A, NBS (470 mg, 2.63 mmol), and AIBN (13mg, 0.07mmol) in 24mL of CCl<sub>4</sub> was refluxed under Ar for 4h. The solution was filtered through a celite pad and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (0-6% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound.

20      Step C:      Preparation of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

To a solution of 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-bromo-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (111mg, 0.34mmol), as described in Step B, in 10mL of DMF was added imidazole (117mg, 1.72mmol). The reaction was stirred for 18h at ambient temperature. The solvent was removed *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc and was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, and brine. The organics were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (1% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) and treated with 1N HCl in ether to give the title compound as a HCl salt.

<sup>1</sup>HNMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 400MHz)  $\delta$  9.04(1H, s), 7.84(1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.61(2H, d, J=11Hz), 7.43(1H, t, J=8Hz), 7.27(2H, t, J=7Hz), 7.16 (1H, s), 7.05-7.07(2H, m), 5.50(2H, s). FAB MS 310 (M+1)

Anal. calculated for C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>12</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>1</sub>Cl<sub>1</sub> · 1.0 HCl · 0.85 H<sub>2</sub>O

C, 56.47; H, 4.10; N, 11.62;

Found      C, 56.85; H, 4.08; N, 11.23.



### EXAMPLE 8

#### Preparation of 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

5

##### Step A: Preparation of 2-hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

Methyl 4-cyano-3-hydroxybenzoate, as described in Example 4, Step C, (0.50 g, 2.82 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (30 mL), treated with LiBH<sub>4</sub> (2.0M solution in THF) (5.64 mL, 11.28 mmol) and heated at  
10 reflux overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated, then partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and 1N HCl (50 mL). Next, the aqueous layer was extracted with additional EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), the organic layers were combined, washed with brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). The title compounds was obtained by filtering and concentrating to  
15 dryness.  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J = 1 Hz), 6.89 (1H, dd, J = 1, 8, Hz), 4.58 (2H, s).

##### Step B: Preparation of 4-bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile

20 2-hydroxy-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (0.20 g, 1.34 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (5 mL) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) and then treated with triphenylphosphine (0.53 g, 2.01 mmol) and carbon tetrabromide (0.67 g, 2.01 mmol) at ambient temperature with stirring. After 2 h, the reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL), the  
25 organic layer were separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and filtered to give the title compound after silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/ hexane to 25% EtOAc/ hexane).  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 6.94 (1H, s), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 4.40 (2H, s).

30

##### Step C: Preparation of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-bromomethyl-2-hydroxy-benzonitrile (0.22 g, 1.05 mmol) and imidazole (0.36 g, 5.23 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (10 mL) with  
35 stirring at ambient temperature. After stirring for 18 h, the reaction

mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified by silica gel chromatography eluting with 2% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to 5% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) δ 11.11 (1H, s), 7.74 (1H, s), 7.58 (1H, d, J = 8 Hz), 7.17 (1H, s), 6.95 (1H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J = 8, Hz), 6.69 (1H, s), 5.23 (2H, s).

Step D: Preparation of 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

4-chlorophenethyl alcohol (0.11 g, 0.67 mmol) and triethylamine (0.37 mL, 2.68 mmol) were dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) at 0°C. Then it was treated with methanesulfonyl chloride (0.207 mL, 2.68 mmol), with stirring and warming to ambient temperature, until tlc indicated loss of starting material. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, then dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and added to a mixture of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (0.10 g, 0.50 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.33 g, 1.0 mmol) in DMF (2 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 30°C for 18 h, then partitioned between EtOAc and H<sub>2</sub>O, the aqueous layer washed with EtOAc, the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after silica gel chromatography (0.1 to 0.2% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) and conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

Analysis calculated for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>16</sub>N<sub>3</sub>OCl • 1.3 HCl • 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 57.23; H, 4.75; N, 10.54;

Found: C, 57.49; H, 4.74; N, 10.14.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole in Step C and the appropriate mesylate or halide in Step D, the following compounds were prepared:

2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

Analysis calculated for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>16</sub>N<sub>3</sub>OCl • 1.2 HCl • 0.35 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 58.83; H, 4.65; N, 10.83;  
Found: C, 58.90; H, 4.67; N, 10.50.

- 5 2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

- 2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304  
10 Analysis calculated for  $C_{19}H_{17}N_3O \cdot 1.0 HCl \cdot 0.85 H_2O$ :  
C, 64.25; H, 5.59; N, 11.83;  
Found: C, 64.55; H, 5.77; N, 11.44.

- 2-(3-chlorobenzoyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride  
15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324  
Analysis calculated for  $C_{18}H_{14}ClN_3O \cdot 1.2 HCl \cdot 0.40 H_2O$ :  
C, 57.69; H, 4.30; N, 11.21;  
Found: C, 57.66; H, 4.31; N, 11.02.

- 20 2-(4-chlorobenzoyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

- 2-(2,4-dichlorobenzoyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 358  
25 Analysis calculated for  $C_{18}H_{13}Cl_2N_3O \cdot 0.10 H_2O$ :  
C, 60.04; H, 3.70; N, 11.67;  
Found: C, 60.02; H, 3.84; N, 11.78.

- 2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
30 Analysis calculated for  $C_{18}H_{15}N_3O \cdot 0.45 H_2O$ :  
C, 72.68; H, 5.39; N, 14.13;  
Found: C, 73.03; H, 5.13; N, 13.75.

- 2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 366

Analysis calculated for  $C_{24}H_{19}N_3O \cdot 1.1 HCl \cdot 0.85 H_2O$ :

C, 68.49; H, 5.22; N, 9.99;

Found: C, 68.46; H, 5.24; N, 9.64.

5 2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332

Analysis calculated for  $C_{21}H_{21}N_3O \cdot 1.4 HCl$ :

C, 65.94; H, 5.90; N, 10.99;

Found: C, 65.94; H, 5.78; N, 10.78.

10

2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

Analysis calculated for  $C_{20}H_{19}N_3O \cdot 1.1 HCl$ :

C, 67.19; H, 5.67; N, 11.75;

15 Found: C, 67.20; H, 5.43; N, 11.70.

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 381.1710; measured 381.1707.

20

2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 394.1910; measured 394.1914.

25 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

HR mass spectrum theoretical 430.1920; measured 430.1914.

EXAMPLE 9

30

Preparation of 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-(2-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzoic acid

4-Bromo-3-fluorotoluene(40.0 g, 0.212 mol) was heated at 90° C in H<sub>2</sub>O (200 mL) and pyridine (200 mL) with mechanical stirring under Ar. Potassium permanganate (KMnO<sub>4</sub>) (67 g, 0.424 mol) was added portionwise over 3 h. After 4 h, an HPLC of a filtered sample indicated 50 % conversion to the acid. An additional 30 g of KMnO<sub>4</sub> was added and heating continued overnight. HPLC indicated 81% conversion. Further KMnO<sub>4</sub> was added portionwise with reaction monitoring by HPLC until > 95% conversion was obtained. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite, the filter pad washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, aq NaOH and EtOH. The filtrate was concentrated to a small volume, then partitioned between 3N NaOH solution and diethyl ether. The aqueous basic layer was separated, cooled in an ice- H<sub>2</sub>O bath and acidified slowly with 6N HCl solution to precipitate the white solid product. This was collected by suction filtration and dried at 40 °C. in a vacuum oven overnight to give the title compound. mp 190 -192°C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.83 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 9 Hz), 7.78 (dd, 1H, J = 2, 8 Hz), 7.67 - 7.71 (m, 1H).

Step B: Preparation of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol

4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzoic acid (40.8 g, 0.187 mol) was dissolved in THF (250 ml) with magnetic stirring under Ar in an ice-H<sub>2</sub>O bath. The cloudy solution was treated dropwise with borane-THF complex (1 M) (374 mL, 0.374 mol) over a 1 h period maintaining the internal temperature at < 10°C. The reaction mixture was left to warm to ambient temperature overnight, then cooled in an ice H<sub>2</sub>O bath and treated dropwise with H<sub>2</sub>O ( 150 mL). The THF was removed on a rotary evaporator, and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and H<sub>2</sub>O. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL), the organic layers combined, washed with brine, and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated to give the title compound as an oil which solidified on standing. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.52 (t, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 7.16 (d, 1H, J = 9 Hz), 7.02 (d, 1H, J = 8 Hz), 4.67 (s, 2H), 1.47 ( br s, 1H).

Step C: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile

- 4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol (20 g, 0.097 mol) was dissolved in DMF (100 mL) and then placed under high vacuum for 15 min. The solution was then purged with Ar for 15 min. While purging continued, zinc cyanide (8 g, 0.068 mol) and the catalyst,  $\text{Pd}[(\text{PPh}_3)]_4$ , (5.63 g, 0.0049 mol) were added. The reaction mixture was heated at 95°C under Ar for 18 h, then cooled to ambient temperature and added to  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, then washed with 1M HCl,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , brine, and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound as a white solid after chromatography (silica gel, hexane: EtOAc, 6.5:3.5).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.61 (t, 1H,  $J = 8$  Hz), 7.23 - 7.29 (m, 2H), 4.80 (d, 2H,  $J = 6$  Hz), 1.93 (t, 1H,  $J = 6$  Hz).

Step D: Preparation of 4-bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile

- N-Bromosuccinimide (6.6 g, 0.037 mol) was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (150 mL), cooled to 0°C and treated with dimethylsulfide (3.27 mL, 0.0446 mol). The solution was cooled to -20°C and then treated dropwise with a solution of 2-fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (3.74 g, 0.0248 mol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (30 mL). After the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 2 h then left to warm to ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was added to ice/  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , extracted with EtOAc, the organic layer separated, washed with brine and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound which was purified chromatography (silica gel, 5-10% EtOAc/ hexane).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.61 (dd, 1H,  $J = 8, 8$  Hz), 7.26 - 7.30 (m, 2H), 4.45 (s, 2H).

Step E: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 4-Bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile (3.44g, 16.0 mmol) and imidazole (5.47 g, 80.3 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (40 mL) and stirred at ambient temperature for 2 h. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc (300 mL) and aqueous saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with

NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1-2% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>).

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.62 (dd, 1H, J = 8.5, 9.5 Hz), 7.57 (s, 1H), 7.16 (s, 1H),  
5 7.00 (d, 1H, J = 8.5 Hz), 6.94 (d, 1H, J = 9.5 Hz), 6.91 (s, 1H), 5.21 (s, 2H).

Step F: Preparation of 2-(2-naphthyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (0.167 g, 0.830  
10 mmol), 2-naphthol (0.143 g, 0.996 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.54 g, 1.66 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (15 mL) and heated at 55°C under Ar for 18 h. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and 1N NaOH solution. The organic layer was separated, washed with 1N NaOH solution, H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and  
15 concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>).

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326

Analysis calculated for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>15</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O • 1.0 HCl • 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 67.19; H, 4.70; N, 11.20;

20 Found: C, 67.23; H, 4.89; N, 11.14.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole in Step E and the appropriate phenol or thiol in Step F, the following compounds were prepared:

25

2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 301

2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 353

2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 352

- 2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 352
- 5 2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318
- 2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318
- 10 2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344
- 2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290
- 15 2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290
- 2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
20 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 290
- 2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306
- 25 2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306
- 2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 306
- 30 2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304
- 2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304



- 2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336
- 5 2-(1-naphthyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326
- 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343
- 10 2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 294
- 2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332
- 2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 347
- 20 2-(3-N-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318
- 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336
- 25 2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304
- 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
30 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336
- 2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336
- 35 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343

2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 304

5

2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 338

15 2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

20 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 367

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 81

25 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 368

2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 380

30

1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 474

1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 470

5 2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 382

2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 382

10

2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 366

2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 300

2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 332

20 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1H-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

25 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344

30

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1H-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1H-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 315
- 5 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 336
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 342
- 10 4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 377
- N-[3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide  
15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 333
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9H-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 378
- 20 2-(5-cyano-2-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-phenyl-benzamide  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 395
- 2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 311
- 25 N-[3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-  
benzenesulfonamide  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 431
- 30 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 316
- 2-(9H-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 365
- 35

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 330

5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 346

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 346

10

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

15 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 344

20

2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile dihydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 277

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

25 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 310

2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 386

30

2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Analysis calculated for  $C_{23}H_{17}N_3O \cdot 1.0 HCl \cdot 0.75 H_2O$ :

C, 68.82; H, 4.90; N, 10.47;

Found: C, 68.80; H, 4.91; N, 10.30.

35

2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Analysis calculated for  $C_{17}H_{13}N_3O \cdot 1.0 HCl \cdot 0.35 H_2O$ :

C, 64.19; H, 4.66; N, 13.21;

Found: C, 64.33; H, 4.78; N, 12.84.

5

EXAMPLE 10Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

10

Step A: Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile, as described in Example 9, Step E, (0.118 g, 0.586 mmol), 2-chloro-4-methoxyphenol (0.112 g, 0.703 mmol), KF on alumina (40% by weight) (0.112 g, 0.703 mmol) and 18-crown-6 (0.11 g, 10% by weight of phenol) were dissolved in  $CH_3CN$  (5 mL) and heated at reflux under Ar for 18 h. The reaction mixture was filtered, dissolved in  $CH_3OH$  and purified by RP HPLC on a Waters Prep Pak column eluting with a 0.1%TFA/ $H_2O$ : 0.1%TFA/ $CH_3CN$  gradient (95:5 to 5:95) to give the title compound after conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

Analysis calculated for  $C_{18}H_{14}ClN_3O_2 \cdot 1.0 HCl \cdot 0.15 CH_2Cl_2$ :

C, 56.04; H, 3.96; N, 10.80;

25 Found: C, 56.25; H, 3.90; N, 10.42.

Using the procedure described above, but substituting the appropriate heterocycle for imidazole (Example 9, Step E) and the appropriate phenol or thiol in Step A, the following compounds were prepared:

30

2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 326

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 342

5 2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 360

Oxidation of this compound provided the sulfoxide:

10 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl--benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 376

and the sulfone:

15 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl--benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 392

2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 291

20

2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 305

25 2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile  
hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

30

2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile  
hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 324

2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 471

5 2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 318

2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 358

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide

Analysis calculated for  $C_{24}H_{18}N_4O_2 \cdot 0.1 \text{ EtOAc}$ :

C, 72.67; H, 4.70; N, 13.90;

15 Found: C, 72.70; H, 4.70; N, 13.50.

2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-N-phenyl-acetamide

Analysis calculated for  $C_{25}H_{20}N_4O_2 \cdot 0.95 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$ :

20 C, 70.55; H, 5.19; N, 13.17;

Found: C, 70.52; H, 5.03; N, 12.92.

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 327

25

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 343

N-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide

30

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 409

5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 402

35



*N*-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-  
nicotinamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 430

5 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 423

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-  
phenyl-benzamide

10 FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 449

2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-  
benzonitrile hydrochloride

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 364

15

4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

FAB mass spectrum (M+1) 340

#### EXAMPLE 11

20

Preparation of 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-  
phenyl-benzamide trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-  
*N*-phenyl-benzamide (0.075 g, 0.19 mmol) in DMF (5.0ml) was added  
25 NaH (0.016 g, 60% disp., 0.38 mmol). The solution was stirred for 10  
min. and iodoethane (0.060 mL, 0.76 mmol) was added and the stirring  
continued for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue  
was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The EtOAc layer  
was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and  
30 concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after purification on  
preparative HPLC. FAB mass spectrum *m/e* 423 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 1.35 TFA • 0.25 H<sub>2</sub>O :

C, 59.33; H, 4.14; N, 9.65;

Found: C, 59.33; H, 4.11; N, 9.73.

35

Using the procedure described above the following compound was prepared:

3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

5 FAB mass spectrum  $m/e$  449 ( $M+1$ ).

### EXAMPLE 12

10 Preparation of 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

Step A: Preparation of 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

15 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride (126 mg, .348 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (2 mL) and cooled to  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  under argon. Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1.31 mL, 1.31 mmol) was added dropwise over 5 min and stirred for 15 min. Methyl iodide (.086 mL, 1.39 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution (1 mL), warmed to RT, diluted with sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution and extracted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (3X). The combined organic layers were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), concentrated, and purified using  $\text{SiO}_2$  chromatography (0.5 - 1.0 %  $\text{MeOH}/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ). The oil was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound.

25

### EXAMPLE 13

Preparation of 1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole

30 Step A: Preparation of 4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzoic acid methyl ester

35 A mixture of 3-hydroxy-4-iodo-benzoic acid acid methyl ester (0.505 g, 1.82 mmol), cupric acetate (0.330 g, 1.82 mmol), 2-naphthylboronic acid (0.625 g, 3.63 mmol) and powdered 4A molecular sieves (0.3 g) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (21 mL) was treated with triethylamine (1.27 mL, 9.08 mmol) and stirred at ambient temperature for 18 hr. The reaction

5 **Step B:** Preparation of [4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methanol

15

**Step C:** Preparation of [4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-phenyl]-methyl bromide

25

**Step D:** Preparation of 1-[4-Iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole

35

**Analysis calculated for  $C_{20}H_{15}IN_2O \cdot 0.35 Et_2O \cdot 0.25 HCl$ :**

C, 55.71; H, 4.10; N, 6.07;  
Found: C, 55.70; H, 4.07; N, 5.70.

#### EXAMPLE 14

5

Preparation of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-  
imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride

10 Step A: Preparation of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-  
imidazole

To a solution of 4-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole hydrochloride (35.0 g, 260 mmol) in 250 mL of dry DMF at room temperature was added triethylamine (90.6 mL, 650 mmol). A white solid precipitated from the solution. Chlorotriphenylmethane (76.1 g, 273 mmol) in 500 mL of DMF  
15 was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 20 hours, poured over ice, filtered, and washed with ice water. The resulting product was slurried with cold dioxane, filtered, and dried *in vacuo* to provide the title product as a white.

20 Step B: Preparation of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(acetoxymethyl)-  
imidazole

1-Triphenylmethyl-4-(hydroxymethyl)-imidazole (260 mmol) was suspended in 500 mL of pyridine. Acetic anhydride (74 mL, 780 mmol) was added dropwise, and the reaction was stirred for 48 hours  
25 during which it became homogeneous. The solution was poured into 2 L of EtOAc, washed with water (3 x 1 L), 5% aq. HCl soln. (2 x 1 L), sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, and brine, then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide the title product as a white powder which was sufficiently pure for use in the next reaction.

30

Step C: Preparation of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-  
imidazole hydrobromide

A solution of 1-triphenylmethyl-4-(acetoxymethyl)imidazole (36.72 g, 96.14 mmol) and 4-bromomethyl-2-fluoro-benzonitrile, as  
35 described in Example 9, Step D), (20.67 g, 96.14 mmol) in 250 mL of

EtOAc was stirred at 60 °C for 20 hours, during which a white precipitate formed. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and filtered to provide the solid imidazolium bromide salt. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to a volume of 100 mL, reheated at 60 °C for two hours, cooled to room temperature, and filtered again. The filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to a volume 40 mL, reheated at 60 °C for another two hours, cooled to room temperature, and concentrated *in vacuo* to provide a pale yellow solid. All of the solid material was combined, dissolved in 300 mL of methanol, and warmed to 60 °C. After two hours, the solution was reconcentrated *in vacuo* to provide a white solid which was triturated with hexane to remove soluble materials. Removal of residual solvents *in vacuo* provided the title product hydrobromide as a white solid.

15 Step D: Preparation of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride

To a solution of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole hydrobromide ( 0.29 g, 1.06 mmol) in DMF (7.0 mL) was added 2-chlorophenol (0.132 mL, 1.27 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.691 g, 2.12 mmol). The mixture was heated to 55°C and stirred for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title compound after chromatography (SiO<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:CH<sub>3</sub>OH: NH<sub>4</sub>OH/ 98:2:0.2) and conversion to the hydrochloride salt.

FAB mass spectrum m/e 382 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>16</sub>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub> • 1.4 HCl :

Found: C, 55.50; H, 4.05; N, 9.71.

C, 55.55; H, 4.07; N, 9.41.

30

EXAMPLE 15

Preparation of 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

To a solution of acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester hydrochloride (as described in Example 14) (0.112 g, 0.268 mmol) in THF (2.0 mL) was added 1M NaOH (0.536 mL). After 3.5 hr. the reaction was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after conversion to the hydrochloride salt. FAB mass spectrum m/e 340 (M+1). Analysis calculated for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>14</sub>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 1.0 HCl • 0.2 EtOAc :  
C, 57.33; H, 4.25; N, 10.67.  
Found: C, 57.68; H, 3.83; N, 10.65.

#### EXAMPLE 16

Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile ditrifluoroacetate

Step A: Preparation of 4-(5-azidomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

To a solution of 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile hydrochloride, as described in Example 15, (0.07 g, 0.186 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4.0 mL), and triethylamine (0.078 mL, 0.558 mmol) at 0°C was added methanesulfonyl chloride (0.016 mL, 0.205 mmol). The cooling bath was removed and the mixture was stirred for 1hr. To this solution was added sodium azide (0.018 g, 0.277 mmol) in DMF (1.0 mL). After 1hr. the reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title product which was used in the next step without further purification.

Step B: Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile ditrifluoroacetate

To a solution of 4-(5-azidomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile (0.05 g, 0.137 mmol) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH (5.0 mL)

under argon was added 10% Pd/C ( 0.020 g). The mixture was placed under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen and stirred for 18 hr. The mixture was filtered and the CH<sub>3</sub>OH was removed *in vacuo* to give the title compound after purification by preparative HPLC.

5 FAB mass spectrum m/e 339 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>15</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O • 2.2 HCl • 0.1 H<sub>2</sub>O :

C, 45.49; H, 2.97; N, 9.47.

Found: C, 45.43; H, 2.92; N, 9.50.

10

#### EXAMPLE 17

Preparation of N-[3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide hydrochloride

15 Step A: Preparation of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole

To a solution of 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(acetoxymethyl)-imidazole hydrobromide (as described in Example 14, Step C) (31.87 g, 89.77 mmol) in 300 mL of 2:1 THF/water at 0 °C was added lithium  
20 hydroxide monohydrate (7.53 g, 179 mmol). After two hours, the reaction was concentrated *in vacuo* to a 100 mL volume, stored at 0 °C for 30 minutes, then filtered and washed with 700 mL of cold water to provide a brown solid. This material was dried *in vacuo* over P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> to provide the titled product as a pale brown powder which was sufficiently  
25 pure for use in the next step without further purification.

Step B: Preparation of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride

Following the procedures described in Example 16 but  
30 starting with 1-(4-cyano-3-fluorobenzyl)-5-(hydroxymethyl)imidazole (1.1 g, 4.85 mmol) the title compound was prepared.

Step C: Preparation of N-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide

To a solution of 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride (0.17 g, 0.651 mmol) in DMF (5.0 mL) was added cyclohexylacetic acid (0.11 g, 0.782 mmol), BOP reagent (0.433 g, 0.977 mmol), and NMM (0.28 mL, 2.6 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 18 hr. The DMF was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:CH<sub>3</sub>OH:NH<sub>4</sub>OH/ 97:3:0.3).

10

Step D: Preparation of N-[3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3H-imidazol-4-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide hydrochloride

To a solution of N-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-ylmethyl]-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide (0.16 g, 0.451 mmol) in acetonitrile (7.0 mL) was added 2,3-dimethoxyphenol (0.065 mL, 0.497 mmol), KF/Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (0.2 g), and 18-crown-6 (0.032 g). The mixture was refluxed for 20 hr. The acetonitrile was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The ethyl acetate layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Removal of the ethyl acetate *in vacuo* gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:CH<sub>3</sub>OH:NH<sub>4</sub>OH / 98:2:0 and conversion to the hydrochloride salt. FAB mass spectrum m/e 489 (M+1).

25

#### EXAMPLE 18

Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate

30 Step A: Preparation of 4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde

To a well-stirred mixture of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzyl alcohol (as described in Example 9, Step B) (10.25 g, 0.05 mol), TEMPO (0.781 g, 0.005 mol) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1.39 g, 0.005 mol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (200 mL) and a solution of 0.5M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>/ 0.05M K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (200 mL) was added N-chlorosuccinimide (9.35 g, 0.07 mol). After 6 hrs, the

35



layers were separated, the aqueous layer back-washed with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (2 x 50 mL), the organics combined and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). The solution was filtered, concentrated to half its volume, then chromatographed (silica gel,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ) to give the title compound.

- 5  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  9.96 (s, 1H), 7.78 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2, 8$  Hz), 7.62 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2, 8$  Hz), 7.56 (dd, 1H,  $J = 2, 8$  Hz).

Step B: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol

- 10 To a solution of 4-bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde (1.6 g, 7.88 mmol) in diethylether (20 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  was added 4-chlorophenyl-magnesiumbromide (1M/ether, 9.46 mL, 9.46 mmol) dropwise via syringe. The cooling bath was removed and after the mixture was stirred for 18 hr it was cooled to  $0^\circ\text{C}$  and saturated  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution (20  
15 mL) was added to quench the reaction. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , brine, and dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound as a solid after chromatography (silica gel, hexane:EtOAc/ 85:15).

20

Step C: Preparation of (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol

- Following the procedure described in Example 9, Step C, but starting with (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.2  
25 g, 6.97 mmol), the title compound was obtained as a solid.

Step D: Preparation of 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile

- 30 To a solution of (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.2 g, 8.79 mmol) in acetonitrile (30 mL) was added CDI (4.28 g, 8.79 mmol) and imidazole hydrochloride (2.75 g, 8.79 mmol) and the mixture was heated at reflux for 3 hr. The acetonitrile was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution. The EtOAc layer was washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , brine, and

dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ). Filtration and concentration *in vacuo* gave the title compound.

**Step E:** Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-  
imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate

5  
Following the procedure described in Example 11, Step A, but starting with 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-2-fluorobenzonitrile, as described in Step D, (0.06 g, 0.193 mmol) and 3-chlorophenol (0.022 mL, 0.212 mmol), the title compound was  
10 obtained after purification by preparative HPLC.

FAB mass spectrum  $m/e$  420 ( $M+1$ ).

Analysis calculated for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{15}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O} \cdot 1.90 \text{ TFA} \cdot 0.40 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$  :

C, 49.98; H, 2.77; N, 6.52.

Found: C, 49.98; H, 2.72; N, 6.36.

15

**EXAMPLE 19**

Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-  
imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile hydrochloride

20 To a solution of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile trifluoroacetate (0.065 g, 0.122 mmol) in acetonitrile (5 mL) was added 1M KOH (0.5 mL) (pH = 9-10) and 37% aqueous formaldehyde (0.14 mL). After stirring for 18hr the mixture was  
25 adjusted to pH = 3 with acetic acid, diluted with  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  (3 mL) and purified on prep HPLC. The TFA salt was converted to the HCl salt to obtain the title compound.

FAB mass spectrum  $m/e$  450 ( $M+1$ ).

Analysis calculated for  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{17}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O}_2 \cdot 0.4 \text{ CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 \cdot 0.3 \text{ H}_2\text{O}$  :

C, 57.13; H, 3.75; N, 8.06.

30 Found: C, 57.13; H, 3.82; N, 7.67.

EXAMPLE 20Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

5

Step A: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chlorophenyl)-methanol

4-Bromo-3-fluorobenzaldehyde (as described in Example 18, Step A) (3.61 g, 17.7 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous diethyl ether (40 mL). To this solution was added a 1.0M solution of 4-chlorophenyl-magnesium bromide (21.3 mL, 21.3 mmol). After stirring at ambient temperature for 4hr the reaction was quenched with satd.  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  and extracted with  $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$ . The organic layer was washed with satd  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution, water, brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), concentrated and purified by chromatography ( $\text{SiO}_2$ , 10%  $\text{EtOAc}$ /hexane) to give the title compound.

Step B: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanone  
(4-Bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanol (2.26 g, 7.16 mmol) and  $\text{MnO}_2$  (6.22g, 70.1 mmol) was stirred in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (40 mL) for 40 hr. The solution was filtered through a celite pad and concentrated to give the title compound.

Step C: Preparation of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-methanol  
4-Iodo-1-trityl-1H-imidazole (1.39 g, 3.18 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (10 mL). To this solution was added a 3.0M solution of ethylmagnesium bromide (1.11 mL, 3.34 mmol) and stirred under Ar. After 3hr, a solution of (4-bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-methanone (1.00g, 3.18 mmol) dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (5 mL) was added dropwise and the resulting solution was stirred overnight. The reaction was quenched with satd.  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$  solution, diluted with satd.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution to pH=8.5, and extracted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (3X). The combined organic layers were dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), concentrated and purified

using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (10-20% EtOAc/Hexane) to yield the title compound.

**Step D:** Preparation of 4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

(4-Bromo-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(4-chloro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methanol (0.360 g, 0.578 mmol) and  $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$  (0.045 g, 0.405 mmol) was stirred in anhydrous DMF (8 mL). The solution was purged with Ar for 10 min, degassed under high vacuum for 5 min, then tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (0.067 mg, 0.057 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred overnight at 80°C under Ar. Subsequent additions of  $\text{Zn}(\text{CN})_2$  and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) were added to drive the reaction to completion. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc and extracted with satd.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  solution, water and brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), concentrated and purified using  $\text{SiO}_2$  chromatography (0.5%  $\text{MeOH}/\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ) to yield the title compound.

**Step E:** Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

20 4-[(4-Chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile (0.337 g, 0.591 mmol), 3-chlorophenol (0.074 mL, 0.709 mmol), 40% KF on alumina (0.182 g), and 18-Crown-6 ether (0.018 g, 0.068 mmol) were refluxed in CH<sub>3</sub>CN for 40 hr under Ar. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, brine and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound.

25

**Step F:** Preparation of 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile  
2-(3-Chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (0.269 g, 0.396 mmol), trifluoroacetic acid (5 mL), triethylsilane (0.050 mL, 3.17 mmol) was stirred in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) under Ar for 2hr. The reaction mixture was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified using

SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (1-1.5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> w NH<sub>4</sub>OH) to give the title compound. FAB MS (M+1) = 436

Analysis calculated for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>15</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 0.35 H<sub>2</sub>O :

C, 62.41; H, 3.58; N, 9.49.

5 Found: C, 62.38; H, 3.68; N, 9.28.

### EXAMPLE 21

10 Preparation of 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of [2-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester

To a solution of N<sup>Γ</sup>-pivaloyloxymethyl-N<sup>α</sup>-phthaloyl-histamine (J. C. Emmett, F. H. Holloway, and J. L. Turner, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1*, 1341, (1979)) (4.59 g, 0.0124 mmol) in acetonitrile (40 mL) was added 2-fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 9, Step D) (2.8 g, 0.013 mmol) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 18 hr. A white solid precipitate formed which after cooling to 0°C was collected by filtration to obtain the quaternary salt. This intermediate was dissolved in EtOH (100 mL), hydrazine (1.46 mL, 0.046 mmol) was added, and the mixture was heated at reflux for 4 hr. A white precipitate was observed and the reaction was cooled to 25°C. Dimethylphthalate (11.4 mL, 0.0699 mmol) was added and the mixture was again refluxed for 18 hr. After cooling to 25°C the precipitate was removed by filtration and washed with EtOAc. The filtrate was evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in THF (125 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (25 mL). To this solution was added solid Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (4.0 g, 0.0377 mmol) and BOC<sub>2</sub>O (4.47 g, 0.020 mmol) and the reaction was stirred for 18 hr. The THF was removed *in vacuo* and the mixture was partitioned with EtOAc and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The EtOAc layer was washed with brine, dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and evaporated *in vacuo* to obtain the title product after chromatography (silica gel, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:MeOH:NH<sub>4</sub>OH/97:3:0.3).

35

**Step B:** Preparation of 4-[5-(2-amino-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride

A solution of (2-[3-(4-cyano-3-fluoro-benzyl)-3H-imidazol-4-yl]-ethyl)-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester (1.0 g, 0.0029 mmol) in EtOAc (30 mL) was cooled to -20°C and saturated with HCl gas. The cooling bath was removed and the reaction was stirred for 2 hr. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* to obtain the title compound which was used without further purification.

**Step C:** Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

To a solution of 4-[5-(2-amino-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-2-fluoro-benzonitrile dihydrochloride (0.92 g, 0.0029 mmol) in acetonitrile (150 mL) and triethylamine (3.2 mL) was added 2-bromoethyl ether (0.839 mL, 0.0067 mmol) and the mixture was refluxed for 48 hr. The solvents were removed *in vacuo* and the residue was dissolved in EtOAc which was washed twice with 1M HCl (100 mL). The HCl layers were combined and adjusted to pH = 9 with solid Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and extracted 3 times with EtOAc. The EtOAc layers were combined and dried with brine and MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Removal of the EtOAc *in vacuo* yielded the title compound which was used as is in the next step.

**Step D:** Preparation of 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

Following the procedure described in Example 11, Step A, the title compound was prepared using 2-fluoro-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile (0.15 g, 0.477 mmol) and 2,4-dichlorothiophenol (0.086 g, 0.477 mmol).

FAB mass spectrum m/e 473 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>22</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>4</sub>OS • 0.85 TFA • 0.3 H<sub>2</sub>O :

C, 51.52; H, 4.11; N, 9.73.

Found: C, 51.51; H, 4.29; N, 9.36.

Following the above methods, the following compound was prepared:

2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

---

FAB mass spectrum  $m/e$  457 ( $M+1$ ).

Analysis calculated for  $C_{23}H_{22}Cl_2N_4O_2 \cdot 0.4 H_2O$  :

5 C, 59.34; H, 4.96; N, 12.04.

Found: C, 59.32; H, 4.89; N, 11.75.

EXAMPLE 22

10 Preparation of 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

---

Step A: Preparation of 2-Fluoro-4-formylbenzonitrile

---

2-Fluoro-4-hydroxymethylbenzonitrile (Example 9, Step C)

- 15 10 g, 0.066 mol) and triethylamine (32.3 mL, 0.231 mol) were dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (100 mL)- DMSO (20 mL) at  $< 5^\circ C$ . with stirring and treated dropwise with a solution of pyridine $\cdot SO_3$  complex (31.5 g, 0.198 mol) in DMSO (70 mL) maintaining the reaction mixture temperature at  $< 10^\circ C$ . The reaction mixture was stirred at  $5^\circ C$  for 1 hr after the addition, then
- 20 at  $20^\circ C$ . for 1 hr, then partitioned between  $CH_2Cl_2$  and  $H_2O$ . The organic layer was separated, washed well with  $H_2O$ , brine, and dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound after purification by chromatography (silica gel, hexane: EtOAc, 3:1).
- $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  10.06 (d, 1H,  $J = 2$  Hz), 7.86 (dd, 1H,  $J = 5, 8$  Hz), 7.798
- 25 (dd, 1H,  $J = 1, 8$  Hz), 7.728 (dd, 1H,  $J = 1, 8$  Hz).

Step B: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(1-trityl-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

---

- To a solution of 4-iodo-1-trityl-1*H*-imidazole (5.00 g, 11.5
- 30 mmol) in anhydrous  $CH_2Cl_2$  (30 mL) was added a 3.0M solution of ethylmagnesium bromide (6.58 mL, 19.7 mmol) with stirring under Ar. After 3h, the reaction mixture was cooled to  $-78^\circ C$  and a solution of 2-fluoro-4-formyl-benzonitrile (1.70g, 11.5 mmol) dissolved in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (20 mL) was added dropwise. The reaction was allowed to warm to RT over
- 35 2h, quenched with saturated  $NH_4Cl$  solution, diluted with satd.  $NaHCO_3$

solution to pH=8.5, and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3X). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (0-1% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to yield the title compound.

5    Step C:      Preparation of acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester

2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(1-trityl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (4.05 g, 8.81 mmol), pyridine (2.14 mL, 26.4 mmol), and acetic anhydride (12.5 mL, 132 mmol) were stirred in anhydrous DMF  
10 (60 mL) for 3h under Ar. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with EtOAc (250 mL), washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2X), brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give the title compound.

15    Step D:      Preparation of acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(3-methyl-3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester

Acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(1-trityl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester (4.60 g, 9.17 mmol) and dimethyl sulfate (0.83 mL, 8.81 mmol) were dissolved in EtOAc (20 mL) and heated at 60°C overnight under Ar. The reaction was concentrated *in vacuo*, diluted with MeOH  
20 (30 mL), and refluxed for 1h. Concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (0.5 - 4% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> with NH<sub>4</sub>OH) to give the title compound.

25    Step E:      Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile

Acetic acid (4-cyano-3-fluoro-phenyl)-(3-methyl-3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl ester (1.26 g, 4.59 mmol) and NaOH (5.5 mL, 5.5 mmol) were dissolved in THF (15 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (25 mL). After 1h, the reaction was diluted with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>  
30 (3X), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give the title compound.

Step F:      Preparation of 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride  
2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3H-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (0.099 g, 0.428 mmol), 2-naphthol (0.062 g, 0.4287 mmol) and  
35



Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.279 g, 0.856 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMSO (5 mL) and heated at 80°C under Ar for 1.5h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (1-2.5% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>). The purified compound was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound.

FAB MS (M+1) = 365.

Analysis calculated for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>17</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 1.00 HCl • 1.60 H<sub>2</sub>O:

10 C, 62.81; H, 5.08; N, 9.99

Found: C, 62.81; H, 4.98; N, 10.20.

#### EXAMPLE 23

15 Preparation of 4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[Hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile (as described in Example 22) (0.219 g, 0.616 mmol) was dissolved in SOCl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) and stirred at RT for 2h under Ar<sub>2</sub>. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and azeotroped with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3X). The solid was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (20 mL) and cooled to -78°C. NH<sub>3(g)</sub> was bubbled through the solution, and the reaction was stirred for 4h while warming to RT under Ar. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and the title compound was obtained after purification ( RPLC (95/5 - 5/95 H<sub>2</sub>O/CH<sub>3</sub>CN with 0.1% TFA, flow = 65 mL/min).

#### EXAMPLE 24

30 Preparation of 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of 4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-2-  
(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-  
benzonitrile (as described in Example 22, Step E) (0.172 g, 0.743 mmol), 2-  
5 naphthol (0.107 g, 0.743 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.727 g, 2.23 mmol) were  
dissolved in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and heated at 60°C under Ar for 2  
days. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>  
solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>),  
concentrated and purified using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (1-2%  
10 MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to give the title compound.

Step B: Preparation of 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-  
ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-(3-Methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-  
15 yloxy)-benzonitrile (0.109 g, 0.308 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous  
THF (5 mL) and a 3.0 M solution of MeMgBr (0.35 mL, 1.05 mmol) was  
added and stirred at RT. The reaction was quenched with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl after  
1h, concentrated, diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub>  
solution, water, brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give the title  
20 compound. FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 370.

Analysis calculated for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 0.40 EtOAc • 0.05 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 72.85; H, 5.54; N, 10.36

Found: C, 72.87; H, 5.31; N, 10.29.

25

EXAMPLE 25

Preparation of 4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-  
(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

4-[1-Hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-  
30 (naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile (as described in Example 24) (0.068 g,  
0.184 mmol) was dissolved in SOCl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) and stirred at RT for 1.5h.  
The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and azeotroped with anhydrous

CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3X). The solid was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (5 mL) and cooled to -78°C. NH<sub>3(g)</sub> was bubbled through the solution and stirred for 4h while warming to RT under Ar. The solution was concentrated *in vacuo* and purified using reverse phase chromatography (95/5 - 5/95 H<sub>2</sub>O/CH<sub>3</sub>CN with 0.1% TFA, flow = 65 mL/min). The compound was converted to its free base using saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3x), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and treated with 1N HCl ethereal solution to give the title compound. FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 369.

- 10 Using the method described above, but substituting 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide (as described in Example 26, Step C), the following compound was prepared:
- 15 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide.

FT/ICR MS (M+1) = 466

Analysis calculated for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 0.15 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 71.81; H, 5.88; N, 14.96;

Found: C, 71.86; H, 5.59; N, 14.78.

20

#### EXAMPLE 26

Preparation of 3-{2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

25

Step A: Preparation of 2-Fluoro-4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-benzonitrile

- 2-Fluoro-4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile (as described in Example 22, Step E) (0.655 g, 2.83 mmol) and MnO<sub>2</sub> (1.23 g, 14.2 mmol) were stirred in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (50 mL) and CH<sub>3</sub>CN (5 mL) for 72 h. The solution was filtered and concentrated to yield the title compound.

30

Step B: Preparation of 2-fluoro-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazole-4-carbonyl)-benzonitrile (0.603 g, 2.63 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (30 mL). A solution of 3.0M MeMgBr in diethyl ether (2.55 mL, 7.65 mmol) was added and stirred for 15 min. The reaction was quenched with NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution, diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution and separated. The aqueous layer was back extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3X), the combined organic layers dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give the title compound.

Step C: Preparation of 3-[2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy]-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

2-Fluoro-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile (0.054 g, 0.220 mmol), *N*-ethyl-3-hydroxy-*N*-phenylbenzamide (0.053 g, 0.220 mmol) and Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.143 g, 0.440 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and heated at 60°C under Ar for 4 days. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc, washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated and purified using SiO<sub>2</sub> chromatography (1-3% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) to give the title compound. FAB MS (M+1) = 467  
Analysis calculated for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>2</sub> • 0.65 H<sub>2</sub>O:

C, 70.31; H, 5.75; N, 11.72

Found: C, 70.31; H, 5.65; N, 11.77.

Using the procedures described above but substituting the requisite phenol in Step C, the following compounds were prepared:

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 411

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-  
benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 412

5 2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-  
benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 424

10 2-(3-*tert*-butyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]  
benzonitrile

FAB MS (M+1) = 376

2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-  
ethyl]- benzonitrile

15 FAB MS (M+1) = 391

#### EXAMPLE 27

Preparation of 2-(5-Chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-  
imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

20

Step A: Preparation of 5-Chloro-5'-methyl-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one

5-Chloro-2-pyridinol (2.26 g, 17.4 mmol), 2-bromo-5-methylpyridine (3.00 g, 17.4 mmol), copper (0.022 g, 0.35 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (2.66 g, 19.2 mmol) were heated at 180°C for 16 hrs. The brown  
25 reaction mixture was cooled, diluted with EtOAc and washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2x) and the combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel, EtOAc: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> 20:80 to 50:50 gradient elution) to afford the  
30 title compound as a white solid.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.37 (s, 1H), 7.96(d, J=3.0Hz, 1H), 7.83 (d, J=8.4Hz, 1H), 7.65(dd, J=2.4 and 8.2Hz, 1H), 7.32(dd, J=2.9 and 9.7 Hz, 1H), 6.61(d, J=9.7Hz, 1H) and 2.39(s,3H)ppm.

Step B: Preparation of 5'-Bromomethyl-5-chloro-[1,2']bipyridinyl  
-2-one

5 A solution of 5-chloro-5'-methyl-[1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one (as described in Step A above) (1.00 g, 4.53 mmol), N-bromosuccinimide (0.81 g, 4.53 mmol) and AIBN (0.030 g, 0.18 mmol) in CCl<sub>4</sub> (40mL) was heated at reflux for 2 hrs. The solids were filtered and the filtrate collected. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo and the residue chromatographed (silica gel, EtOAc: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> 25:75 to 50:50 gradient elution) to afford the  
10 title bromide.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.55 (s, 1H), 8.04 (d, J= 2.9 Hz, 1H), 8.01 (d, J=8.4Hz, 1H), 7.88 (dd, J=2.4 and 8.6Hz, 1H), 7.34 (dd, J= 2.9 and 9.8Hz, 1H), 6.61 (d, J=9.9Hz, 1H) and 4.51 (s, 2H) ppm.

15 Step C: Preparation of 2-(5-Chloro-2-oxo-2H-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

Cesium carbonate (0.123 g, 0.376 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-hydroxy-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 4, Step F) (0.050 g, 0.25 mmol) and 5'-bromomethyl-5-chloro-  
20 [1,2']bipyridinyl-2-one (Step H) (0.079 g, 0.263 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (5 mL) and stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and aqueous saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, the organic layer separated, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration to dryness gave the title  
25 compound after chromatography (silica gel, 1-4% CH<sub>3</sub>OH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>).  
FAB MS 418 (M+1).

EXAMPLE 28

30 Preparation of 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

Step A: Preparation of 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-anisole

2-Iodoanisole (1.30 mL, 0.01 mol), 2-hydroxypyridine (0.95 g, 0.01 mol), anhydrous  $K_2CO_3$  (2.76 g, 0.02 mol) and copper powder (0.0636 g, 0.001 mol) were combined and heated at 200°C. for 2 hr. The reaction mixture was cooled, EtOAc added, and filtered. The filtrate was washed with  $H_2O$ , aqueous saturated  $NaHCO_3$  solution, brine, and dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ). Filtration and concentration gave the title compound after chromatography (silica gel, 2%  $CH_3OH$ ,  $CH_2Cl_2$ ).  
 $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  7.36 - 7.44 (m, 2H), 7.25 - 7.29 (m, 1H), 7.18 - 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.03 - 7.08 (m, 2H), 6.65 (d, 1H,  $J = 10$  Hz), 6.195 (td, 1H,  $J = 1, 7$  Hz), 3.82 (s, 3H).

Step B: Preparation of 2-(2-Oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenol

Sodium ethanethiol (0.108 g, 1.29 mmol) was added to a solution of 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-anisole (0.100 g, 0.497 mmol) in DMF (2 mL), and the reaction mixture was heated at 100°C. for 3 hr. The reaction mixture was partitioned between  $CHCl_3$  and saturated aqueous ammonium chloride and treated with 8N HCl (pH = 1). The organic layer was separated, washed with  $H_2O$ , brine, dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ), filtered, concentrated, and taken up in EtOAc, then extracted with 2% NaOH solution. The aqueous basic layer was acidified with 10% HCl solution, then extracted with EtOAc, the organic layer washed with brine, dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ), filtered, and concentrated to give the desired product.

Step C: Preparation of 4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

2-Fluoro-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile (as described in Example 9, Step E) (0.0276 g, 0.137 mmol), 2-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenol (0.0257 g, 0.137 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.089 g, 0.274 mmol) were combined in DMF (1.2 mL) and heated at 70°C. for 18 hr. The title compound was obtained after RP HPLC on a Waters Prep Pak column eluting with a 0.1% TFA/ $H_2O$ : 0.1% TFA/ $CH_3CN$  gradient followed by conversion to the free base.  
FAB MS 369 (M+1).

Analysis calculated for  $C_{22}H_{16}N_4O_2 \cdot 0.3 Et_2O$  :

C, 71.33; H, 4.90; N, 14.34.

Found: C, 71.36; H, 4.83; N, 14.31.

- 5 Using the procedures described above , but using the appropriate iodoanisole in Step C, the following compound is prepared:

4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2H-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

FAB MS 369 (M+1).

10

### EXAMPLE 29

#### In vitro inhibition of ras farnesyl transferase

- Assays of farnesyl-protein transferase.* Partially purified  
15 bovine FPTase and Ras peptides (Ras-CVLS, Ras-CVIM and Ras-CAIL (SEQ.ID.NO.: 12) were prepared as described by Schaber *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:14701-14704 (1990), Pompiano, *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 31:3800 (1992) and Gibbs *et al.*, *PNAS U.S.A.* 86:6630-6634 (1989), respectively. Bovine FPTase was assayed in a volume of 100  $\mu$ l containing 100 mM N-  
20 (2-hydroxy ethyl) piperazine-N'-(2-ethane sulfonic acid) (HEPES), pH 7.4, 5 mM  $MgCl_2$ , 5 mM dithiothreitol (DTT), 100 mM [ $^3H$ ]-farnesyl diphosphate ([ $^3H$ ]-FPP; 740 CBq/mmol, New England Nuclear), 650 nM Ras-CVLS and 10  $\mu$ g/ml FPTase at 31°C for 60 min. Reactions were initiated with FPTase and stopped with 1 ml of 1.0 M HCL in ethanol.  
25 Precipitates were collected onto filter-mats using a TomTec Mach II cell harvester, washed with 100% ethanol, dried and counted in an LKB  $\beta$ -plate counter. The assay was linear with respect to both substrates, FPTase levels and time; less than 10% of the [ $^3H$ ]-FPP was utilized during the reaction period. Purified compounds were dissolved in 100%  
30 dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) and were diluted 20-fold into the assay. Percentage inhibition is measured by the amount of incorporation of radioactivity in the presence of the test compound when compared to the amount of incorporation in the absence of the test compound.

- Human FPTase was prepared as described by Omer *et al.*,  
35 *Biochemistry* 32:5167-5176 (1993). Human FPTase activity was assayed



as described above with the exception that 0.1% (w/v) polyethylene glycol 20,000, 10  $\mu$ M ZnCl<sub>2</sub> and 100 nM Ras-CVIM were added to the reaction mixture. Reactions were performed for 30 min., stopped with 100  $\mu$ L of 30% (v/v) trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in ethanol and processed as described above for the bovine enzyme.

The compounds of the instant invention described in the above Examples were tested for inhibitory activity against human FPTase by the assay described above and were found to have IC<sub>50</sub> of <50  $\mu$ M.

### EXAMPLE 30

#### Modified *In vitro* GGTase inhibition assay

The modified geranylgeranyl-protein transferase inhibition assay is carried out at room temperature. A typical reaction contains (in a final volume of 50  $\mu$ L): [<sup>3</sup>H]geranylgeranyl diphosphate, biotinylated Ras peptide, 50 mM HEPES, pH 7.5, a modulating anion (for example 10 mM glycerophosphate or 5mM ATP), 5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, 10  $\mu$ M ZnCl<sub>2</sub>, 0.1% PEG (15-20,000), 2 mM dithiothreitol, and geranylgeranyl-protein transferase type I (GGTase). The GGTase-type I enzyme employed in the assay is prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,470,832, incorporated by reference. The Ras peptide is derived from the K4B-Ras protein and has the following sequence: biotinyl-GKKKKKKSKTKCVIM (single amino acid code) (SEQ.ID.NO.: 13). Reactions are initiated by the addition of GGTase and stopped at timed intervals (typically 15 min) by the addition of 200  $\mu$ L of a 3 mg/mL suspension of streptavidin SPA beads (Scintillation Proximity Assay beads, Amersham) in 0.2 M sodium phosphate, pH 4, containing 50 mM EDTA, and 0.5% BSA. The quenched reactions are allowed to stand for 2 hours before analysis on a Packard TopCount scintillation counter.

For inhibition studies, assays are run as described above, except inhibitors are prepared as concentrated solutions in 100% dimethyl sulfoxide and then diluted 25-fold into the enzyme assay mixture. IC<sub>50</sub> values are determined with Ras peptide near  $K_M$

concentrations. Enzyme and nonsaturating substrate conditions for inhibitor IC<sub>50</sub> determinations are as follows: 75 pM GGTase-I, 1.6 μM Ras peptide, 100 nM geranylgeranyl diphosphate.

5

### EXAMPLE 31

#### Cell-based *in vitro* ras prenylation assay

The cell lines used in this assay consist of either Rat1 or NIH3T3 cells transformed by either viral H-ras; an N-ras chimeric gene in which the C-terminal hypervariable region of viral-H-ras was substituted with the corresponding region from the N-ras gene; or ras-CVLL, a viral-H-ras mutant in which the C-terminal exon encodes leucine instead of serine, making the encoded protein a substrate for geranylgeranylation by GGTase-I. The assay can also be performed using cell lines transformed with human H-ras, N-ras or K4B-ras. The assay is performed essentially as described in DeClue, J.E. et al., Cancer Research 51:712-717, (1991). Cells in 10 cm dishes at 50-75% confluency are treated with the test compound(s) (final concentration of solvent, methanol or dimethyl sulfoxide, is 0.1%). After 4 hours at 37°C, the cells are labelled in 3 ml methionine-free DMEM supplemented with 10% regular DMEM, 2% fetal bovine serum, 400 μCi [<sup>35</sup>S]methionine (1000 Ci/mmol) and test compound(s). Cells treated with lovastatin, a compound that blocks Ras processing in cells by inhibiting the rate-limiting step in the isoprenoid biosynthetic pathway (Hancock, J.F. et al. Cell, 57:1167 (1989); DeClue, J.E. et al. Cancer Res., 51:712 (1991); Sinensky, M. et al. J. Biol. Chem., 265:19937 (1990)), serve as a positive control in this assay. After an additional 20 hours, the cells are lysed in 1 ml lysis buffer (1% NP40/20 mM HEPES, pH 7.5/5 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>/1mM DTT/10 mg/ml aprotinen/2 mg/ml leupeptin/2 mg/ml antipain/0.5 mM PMSF) and the lysates cleared by centrifugation at 100,000 x g for 45 min. Alternatively, four hours after the additon of the labelling media, the media is removed, the cells washed, and 3 ml of media containing the same or a different test compound added. Following an additional 16 hour incubation, the lysis is carried out as above. Aliquots of lysates containing equal numbers of acid-precipitable counts are brought to 1 ml

with IP buffer (lysis buffer lacking DTT) and immunoprecipitated with the ras-specific monoclonal antibody Y13-259 (Furth, M.E. et al., J. Virol. 43:294-304, (1982)). Following a 2 hour antibody incubation at 4°C, 200 µl of a 25% suspension of protein A-Sepharose coated with rabbit anti  
5 rat IgG is added for 45 min. The immunoprecipitates are washed four times with IP buffer (20 nM HEPES, pH 7.5/1 mM EDTA/1% Triton X-100.0.5% deoxycholate/0.1%/SDS/0.1 M NaCl) boiled in SDS-PAGE sample buffer and loaded on 13% acrylamide gels. When the dye front reached the bottom, the gel is fixed, soaked in Enlightening, dried and  
10 autoradiographed. The intensities of the bands corresponding to prenylated and nonprenylated Ras proteins are compared to determine the percent inhibition of prenyl transfer to protein.

### EXAMPLE 32

15

#### Cell-based *in vitro* anchorage independent growth assay (SALSA)

SALSA (Soft Agar-Like Surrogate Assay) measures the inhibition of anchorage-independent growth by prenyl-transferase inhibitors. Only transformed cells are able to grow anchorage-  
20 independently in the SALSA format. Additionally, cells growing in the SALSA format grow in clumps, resembling the colonies formed in soft agar. SALSA may be used to measure the growth inhibition by prenyl-transferase inhibitors in a variety of transformed cell lines, including Rat1 fibroblasts transformed with viral-H-ras (H-ras/rat1), as  
25 well as a panel of human tumor cell lines (HTL's).

SALSA is performed in 96-well plates that are coated with a thin film of the polymer, PolyHEMA (Poly(2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate)), which prevents cells from attaching to the plate. Rat1 fibroblast cells transformed with v-Ha-ras (this cell line has been  
30 deposited in the ATCC on August 19, 1997 under the terms of the Budapest convention and has been given a designation of ATCC CRL 12387) are seeded at 5000 cells/well, grown for 4 hr, then vehicle or half-log dilutions of test compound (in either an 8 or 12 point titration) are added. The cells are then grown for 6 days at 37 degrees, without  
35 changing the growth media or adding fresh compound. At day 6, cell

growth is assessed via a colorimetric assay that measures the cleavage of the tetrazolium dye, MTT, to an insoluble purple formazan, a reaction dependent upon mitochondrial dehydrogenases. At day 6, the cells are incubated for 4 hr with 0.5 mg/ml MTT, and then SDS is added to 9% w/v to lyse the cells and solubilize the insoluble MTT-formazan. The amount of MTT metabolism is quantitated via spectrophotometric detection at 570 nM. Dose-inhibition curves and IC<sub>50</sub>'s are determined.

### EXAMPLE 33

10

#### Construction of SEAP reporter plasmid pDSE100

The SEAP reporter plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed by ligating a restriction fragment containing the SEAP coding sequence into the plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI. The SEAP gene is derived from the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA). The plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was constructed by Deborah Jones (Merck) and contains 5 sequential copies of the 'dyad symmetry response element' cloned upstream of a 'CAT-TATA' sequence derived from the cytomegalovirus immediate early promoter. The plasmid also contains a bovine growth hormone poly-A sequence.

The plasmid, pDSE100 was constructed as follows. A restriction fragment encoding the SEAP coding sequence was cut out of the plasmid pSEAP2-Basic using the restriction enzymes EcoR1 and HpaI. The ends of the linear DNA fragments were filled in with the Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA Polymerase I. The 'blunt ended' DNA containing the SEAP gene was isolated by electrophoresing the digest in an agarose gel and cutting out the 1694 base pair fragment. The vector plasmid pCMV-RE-AKI was linearized with the restriction enzyme Bgl-II and the ends filled in with Klenow DNA Polymerase I. The SEAP DNA fragment was blunt end ligated into the pCMV-RE-AKI vector and the ligation products were transformed into DH5-alpha E. coli cells (Gibco-BRL). Transformants were screened for the proper insert and then mapped for restriction fragment orientation. Properly oriented recombinant constructs were sequenced across the cloning junctions to verify the correct sequence. The resulting plasmid contains the SEAP

coding sequence downstream of the DSE and CAT-TATA promoter elements and upstream of the BGH poly-A sequence.

Cloning of a Myristylated viral-H-ras expression plasmid

5

A DNA fragment containing viral-H-ras can be PCRRed from plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. **36**, 408, 1980) using the following oligos.

Sense strand:

10 5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGGGGAGTAGCAAGAGCAAGCCTAA  
GGACCCAGCCAGCGCCGGATGACAGAATACAAGCTTGTGGTG  
G 3'. (SEQ.ID.NO.: 14)

15 Antisense: 5'CACATCTAGATCAGGACAGCACAGACTTGCAGC 3'.  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 15)

A sequence encoding the first 15 aminoacids of the v-src gene, containing a myristylation site, is incorporated into the sense strand oligo. The sense strand oligo also optimizes the 'Kozak' translation initiation sequence immediately 5' to the ATG start site. To prevent prenylation at the viral-ras C-terminus, cysteine 186 would be mutated to a serine by substituting a G residue for a C residue in the C-terminal antisense oligo. The PCR primer oligos introduce an XhoI site at the 5' end and a XbaI site at the 3' end. The XhoI-XbaI fragment can be ligated into the mammalian expression plasmid pCI (Promega) cut with XhoI and XbaI. This results in a plasmid in which the recombinant myr-viral-H-ras gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

30 Cloning of a viral-H-ras-CVLL expression plasmid

A viral-H-ras clone with a C-terminal sequence encoding the amino acids CVLL can be cloned from the plasmid "H-1" (Ellis R. et al. J. Virol. **36**, 408, 1980) by PCR using the following oligos.

35

Sense strand:

5'TCTCCTCGAGGCCACCATGACAGAATACAAGCTTGTGGTGG-3'  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 16)

5 Antisense strand:

5'CACTCTAGACTGGTGTCTCAGAGCAGCACACACTTGCAGC-3'  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 17)

10 The sense strand oligo optimizes the 'Kozak' sequence and adds an XhoI site. The antisense strand mutates serine 189 to leucine and adds an XbaI site. The PCR fragment can be trimmed with XhoI and XbaI and ligated into the XhoI-XbaI cut vector pCI (Promega). This results in a plasmid in which the mutated viral-H-*ras*-CVLL gene is constitutively transcribed from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

15

Cloning of c-H-*ras*-Leu61 expression plasmid

The human c-H-*ras* gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

20 Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGAATTTCGCCACCATGACGGAATATAAGCTGGTGG-3'  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 18)

Antisense strand:

25 5'-GAGAGTCGACGCGTCAGGAGAGCACACACTTGC-3'  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 19)

30 The primers will amplify a c-H-*ras* encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I site at the C-terminal end. After trimming the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-H-*ras* fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI-Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glutamine-61 to a leucine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and  
35 the following oligonucleotide:

5'-CCGCCGGCCTGGAGGAGTACAG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 20)

5 After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-H-*ras*-Leu61 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-H-*ras*-Leu61 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

10

Cloning of a c-N-*ras*-Val-12 expression plasmid

The human c-N-*ras* gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

15

Sense strand:

5'-GAGAGAATTCGCCACCATGACTGAGTACAAACTGGTGG-3'  
(SEQ.ID.NO.: 21)

20 Antisense strand:

5'-GAGAGTCGACTTGTTACATCACCACACATGGC-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.:  
22)

25 The primers will amplify a c-N-*ras* encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, an EcoRI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I stite at the C-terminal end. After trimmng the ends of the PCR product with EcoRI and Sal I, the c-N-*ras* fragment can be ligated into an EcoRI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of glycine-12 to a valine can be  
30 accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

5'-GTTGGAGCAGTTGGTGTGGG-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 23)

- After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-N-*ras*-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using EcoRI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI (Promega) which has been digested with EcoRI and Sal I. The new
- 5 recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe c-N-*ras*-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

Cloning of a c-K-*ras*-Val-12 expression plasmid

- 10 The human c-K-*ras* gene can be PCRed from a human cerebral cortex cDNA library (Clontech) using the following oligonucleotide primers.

Sense strand:

- 5'-GAGAGGTACCGCCACCATGACTGAATATAAACTTGTGG-3'
- 15 (SEQ.ID.NO.: 24)

Antisense strand:

- 5'-CTCTGTCGACGTATTTACATAATTACACACTTTGTC-3'
- (SEQ.ID.NO.: 25)

20

- The primers will amplify a c-K-*ras* encoding DNA fragment with the primers contributing an optimized 'Kozak' translation start sequence, a KpnI site at the N-terminus and a Sal I site at the C-terminal end. After trimming the ends of the PCR product with Kpn I and Sal I, the
- 25 c-K-*ras* fragment can be ligated into a KpnI -Sal I cut mutagenesis vector pAlter-1 (Promega). Mutation of cysteine-12 to a valine can be accomplished using the manufacturer's protocols and the following oligonucleotide:

- 30 5'-GTAGTTGGAGCTGTTGGCGTAGGC-3' (SEQ.ID.NO.: 26)

- After selection and sequencing for the correct nucleotide substitution, the mutated c-K-*ras*-Val-12 can be excised from the pAlter-1 vector, using KpnI and Sal I, and be directly ligated into the vector pCI
- 35 (Promega) which has been digested with KpnI and Sal I. The new



recombinant plasmid will constitutively transcribe *c-K-ras*-Val-12 from the CMV promoter of the pCI vector.

#### SEAP assay

- 5 Human C33A cells (human epithelial carcinoma - ATTC collection) are seeded in 10cm tissue culture plates in DMEM + 10% fetal calf serum + 1X Pen/Strep + 1X glutamine + 1X NEAA. Cells are grown at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere until they reach 50 -80% of confluency.
- 10 The transient transfection is performed by the CaPO<sub>4</sub> method (Sambrook et al., 1989). Thus, expression plasmids for H-*ras*, N-*ras*, K-*ras*, Myr-*ras* or H-*ras*-CVLL are co-precipitated with the DSE-SEAP reporter construct. For 10cm plates 600µl of CaCl<sub>2</sub> -DNA solution is added dropwise while vortexing to 600µl of 2X HBS buffer to give 1.2ml
- 15 of precipitate solution (see recipes below). This is allowed to sit at room temperature for 20 to 30 minutes. While the precipitate is forming, the media on the C33A cells is replaced with DMEM (minus phenol red; Gibco cat. # 31053-028)+ 0.5% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and nonessential aminoacids). The CaPO<sub>4</sub>-DNA
- 20 precipitate is added dropwise to the cells and the plate rocked gently to distribute. DNA uptake is allowed to proceed for 5-6 hrs at 37°C under a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere.

- Following the DNA incubation period, the cells are washed with PBS and trypsinized with 1ml of 0.05% trypsin. The 1 ml of
- 25 trypsinized cells is diluted into 10ml of phenol red free DMEM + 0.2% charcoal stripped calf serum + 1X (Pen/Strep, Glutamine and NEAA ). Transfected cells are plated in a 96 well microtiter plate (100µl/well) to which drug, diluted in media, has already been added in a volume of 100µl. The final volume per well is 200µl with each drug concentration
- 30 repeated in triplicate over a range of half-log steps.

- Incubation of cells and drugs is for 36 hrs at 37° under CO<sub>2</sub>. At the end of the incubation period, cells are examined microscopically for evidence of cell distress. Next, 100µl of media containing the secreted alkaline phosphatase is removed from each well and transferred to a
- 35 microtube array for heat treatment at 65°C for 1 hr to inactivate

endogenous alkaline phosphatases (but not the heat stable secreted phosphatase).

The heat treated media is assayed for alkaline phosphatase by a luminescence assay using the luminescence reagent CSPD® (Tropix, Bedford, Mass.). A volume of 50 µl media is combined with 200 µl of CSPD cocktail and incubated for 60 minutes at room temperature. Luminescence is monitored using an ML2200 microplate luminometer (Dynatech). Luminescence reflects the level of activation of the fos reporter construct stimulated by the transiently expressed protein.

DNA-CaPO<sub>4</sub> precipitate for 10cm. plate of cells

|    |                                  |       |
|----|----------------------------------|-------|
|    | Ras expression plasmid (1µg/µl)  | 10µl  |
| 15 | DSE-SEAP Plasmid (1µg/µl)        | 2µl   |
|    | Sheared Calf Thymus DNA (1µg/µl) | 8µl   |
|    | 2M CaCl <sub>2</sub>             | 74µl  |
|    | dH <sub>2</sub> O                | 506µl |

20 2X HBS Buffer

|    |  |
|----|--|
|    | 280mM NaCl   |
|    | 10mM KCl   |
|    | 1.5mM Na <sub>2</sub> HPO <sub>4</sub> 2H <sub>2</sub> O |
| 25 | 12mM dextrose  |
|    | 50mM HEPES   |
|    | Final pH = 7.05  |

Luminescence Buffer (26ml)

|    |                           |       |
|----|---------------------------|-------|
| 30 | Assay Buffer              | 20ml  |
|    | Emerald Reagent™ (Tropix) | 2.5ml |
|    | 100mM homoarginine        | 2.5ml |
|    | CSPD Reagent® (Tropix)    | 1.0ml |

35 Assay Buffer

Add 0.05M Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> to 0.05M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> to obtain pH 9.5. Make 1mM in MgCl<sub>2</sub>

#### EXAMPLE 34

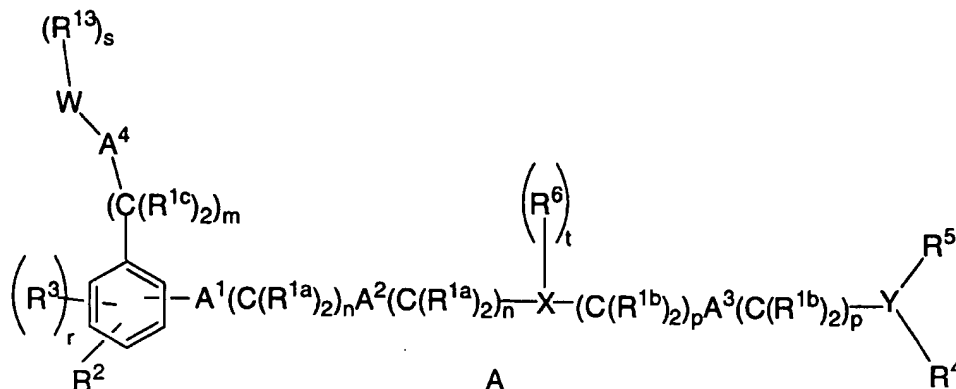
5 *In vivo* tumor growth inhibition assay (nude mouse)

*In vivo* efficacy as an inhibitor of the growth of cancer cells may be confirmed by several protocols well known in the art. Examples of such *in vivo* efficacy studies are described by N. E. Kohl et al. (*Nature Medicine*, 1:792-797 (1995)) and N. E. Kohl et al. (*Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 91:9141-9145 (1994)).

Rodent fibroblasts transformed with oncogenically mutated human Ha-*ras* or Ki-*ras* (10<sup>6</sup> cells/animal in 1 ml of DMEM salts) are injected subcutaneously into the left flank of 8-12 week old female nude mice (Harlan) on day 0. The mice in each oncogene group are randomly assigned to a vehicle, compound or combination treatment group. Animals are dosed subcutaneously starting on day 1 and daily for the duration of the experiment. Alternatively, the farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitor may be administered by a continuous infusion pump. Compound, compound combination or vehicle is delivered in a total volume of 0.1 ml. Tumors are excised and weighed when all of the vehicle-treated animals exhibited lesions of 0.5 - 1.0 cm in diameter, typically 11-15 days after the cells were injected. The average weight of the tumors in each treatment group for each cell line is calculated.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula A:



5

wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 10
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
  - 15 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 20
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - 25 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted

- h)  $N_3$ ,  
 i)  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  
 j)  $R^8HC=CH-$ ,  
 k)  $R^8C\equiv C-$ , and  
 5 l)  $OR^8$ ;

$R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently selected from:

- H, CN,  $NO_2$ , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 $N_3$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  $HC\equiv C-$ , unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 10 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  $CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O-$ ,  $CF_3CH_2O-$ ,  
 $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $OR^8$ ,  $N(R^8)_2$ ,  $-C(O)R^8$ ,  $-O(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OR^8$ ,  
 $-NHC(O)R^8$ , aralkyl, heteroaralkyl,  $-(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OR^8$ ,  
 $-(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $C(O)R^8$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^8$  and  $\begin{array}{c} -C=C-R^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \quad H \quad OH \end{array}$  ;

15  $R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 c)  $NO_2$ ,  
 d) halogen,  
 20 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 h)  $R^8O-$ ,  
 i)  $N_3$ ,  
 25 j)  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  
 k)  $-HC=CH_2$ ,  
 l)  $-C\equiv CH$ ,  
 m)  $CF_3$   
 n)  $R^8O(C=O)-$ , and  
 30 o)  $R^8(O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from

- 5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 10 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- 15 a) a bond,  
b) -HC=CH-,  
c) -C≡C-,  
d) -O-,  
e) -(C=O)-,  
20 f) -O(C=O)-,  
g) -(C=O)O-,  
h) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
i) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
j) -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
25 k) -NHC(O)NH-,  
l) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
m) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
n) -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

- 30 A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
b) heterocycle, and

c) aryl;

X is selected from:

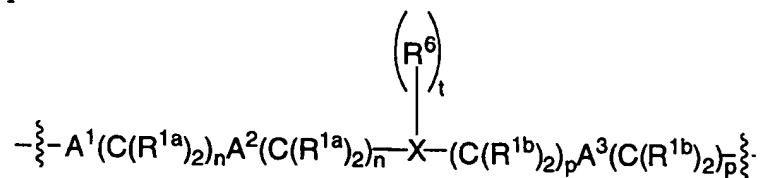
- 5      a) aryl,  
       b) cycloalkyl,  
       c) heterocycle, and  
       d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 10      a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted  
       b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and  
       c) cycloalkyl;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 15    n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
       p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
       q is 0, 1 or 2;  
       r is 0, 1, 2 or 3;  
       s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and;  
 20    t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that

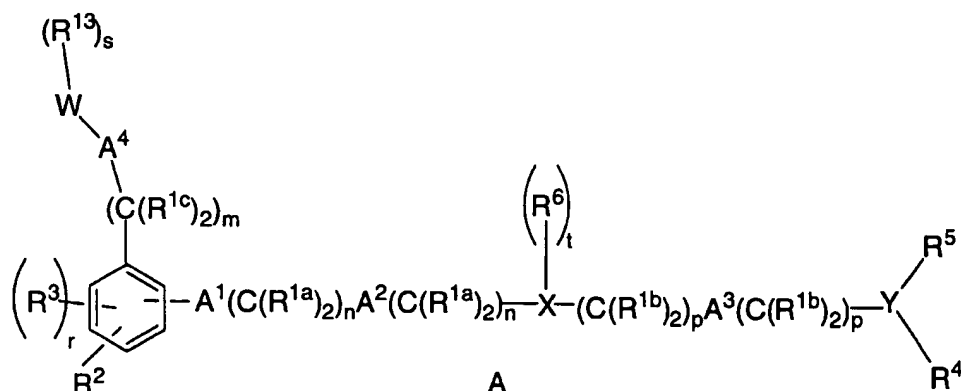


is not a bond;

25

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula A:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5      a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10     c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;
- 15     R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:
  - a) hydrogen,
  - b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - 20    e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - h) N<sub>3</sub>,
  - i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
  - 25    j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=C-,



- k)  $R^8C\equiv C-$ , and  
 l)  $OR^8$ ;

$R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN,  $NO_2$ , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 $N_3$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  $-C\equiv CH$ , unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  $CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O-$ ,  $CF_3CH_2O-$ ,  
 $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $OR^8$ ,  $N(R^8)_2$ ,  $-C(O)R^8$ ,  $-O(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OR^8$ ,  
 $-NHC(O)R^8$ , aralkyl, heteroaralkyl,  $-(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $OR^8$ ,  
 10  $-(C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl) $C(O)R^8$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^8$  and  $\begin{array}{c} -C=C-R^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \quad H \end{array}$  OH ;

$R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 15 c)  $NO_2$ ,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 20 h)  $R^8O-$ , unsubstituted or substituted,  
 i)  $N_3$ ,  
 j)  $R^9S(O)_q-$ ,  
 k)  $-HC=CH_2$ ,  
 l)  $-C\equiv CH$ ,  
 25 m)  $CF_3$   
 n)  $R^8O(C=O)-$ , and  
 o)  $R^8(O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

- 30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

$R^9$  is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 5           H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

10   A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- a)    a bond,  
          b)    -HC=CH-,  
          c)    -C≡C-,  
          d)    -O-,  
15          e)    -(C=O)-,  
          f)    -O(C=O)-,  
          g)    -(C=O)O-,  
          h)    -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
          i)    -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
20          j)    -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
          k)    -NHC(O)NH-,  
          l)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          m)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
          n)    -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>;

25

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a)    heterocycle, and  
30          b)    aryl;

X is selected from:

- a)    aryl,  
          b)    cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and
- d) a bond;

Y is selected from:

- 5 a) aryl,
- b) heterocycle, and
- c) cycloalkyl;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

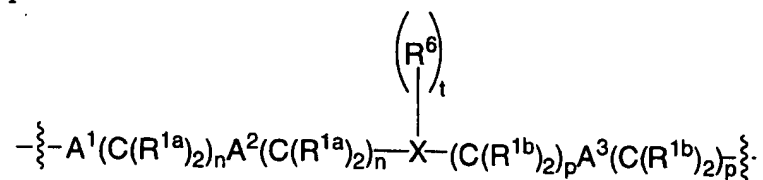
q is 0, 1 or 2;

r is 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

15 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

provided that

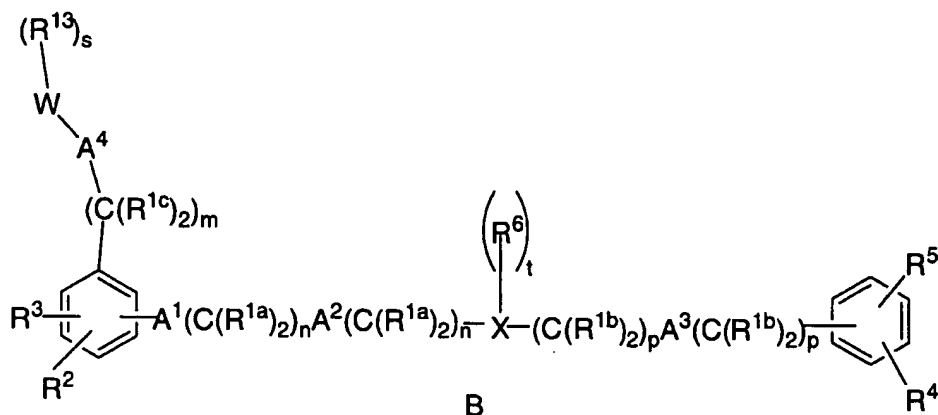


is not a bond;

20

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

3. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N<sub>3</sub>,
- i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=CH-,
- 25 k) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C-, and

l) OR<sup>8</sup>;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

5 H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 10 
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$
;  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- 15 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,
- 20 i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,
- k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,
- l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF<sub>3</sub>
- 25 n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and
- o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O-;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from

30 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 5           H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

10   A<sup>1</sup>, A<sup>2</sup> and A<sup>3</sup> are independently selected from:

- a)    a bond,  
          b)    -HC=CH-,  
          c)    -C≡C-,  
          d)    -O-,  
15       e)    -(C=O)-,  
          f)    -O(C=O)-,  
          g)    -(C=O)O-,  
          h)    -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
          i)    -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
20       j)    -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
          k)    -NHC(O)NH-,  
          l)    -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
          m)   -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
          n)   -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>;

25

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

W is selected from:

- a)    heterocycle, and  
30       b)    aryl;

X is selected from:

- a)    aryl,  
          b)    cycloalkyl,

- c) heterocycle, and  
d) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

5 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

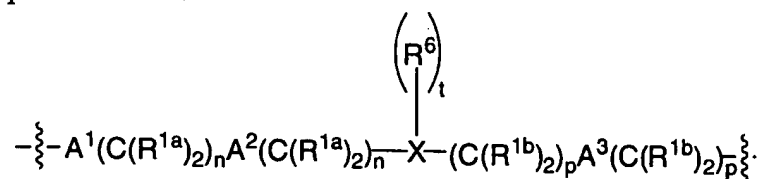
q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

10

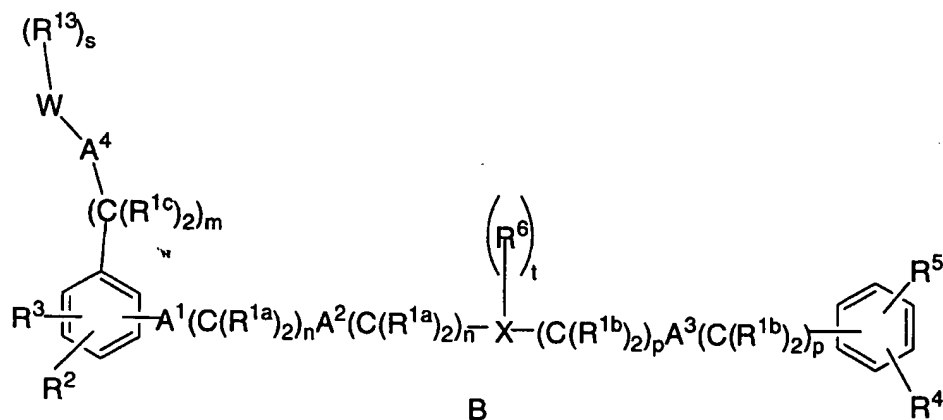
provided that



is not a bond;

15 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

4. The compound of Claim 3, illustrated by formula B:



wherein:

20 R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,

- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 5 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;
- 10 R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:
- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- 15 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) N<sub>3</sub>,
- i) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- 20 j) R<sup>8</sup>HC=CH-,
- k) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C, and
- l) OR<sup>8</sup>;

- R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:
- 25 H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,
- 30 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,



- b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
  - 5 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
  - g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
  - h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,
  - i) N<sub>3</sub>,
  - j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,
  - 10 k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,
  - l) -C≡CH,
  - m) CF<sub>3</sub>
  - n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and
  - o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O-;
- 15 R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;
- 20 R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
unsubstituted or substituted aryl;
- 25 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;
- 30 A<sup>1</sup> is selected from:
- a) a bond,
  - b) -O-,
  - c) -(C=O)-,
  - d) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,
  - 35 e) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-, and

f)  $-S(O)_q-$ ;

$A^2$  and  $A^3$  are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- 5 b)  $-HC=CH-$ ,
- c)  $-C\equiv C-$ ,
- d)  $-O-$ ,
- e)  $-(C=O)-$ ,
- f)  $-O(C=O)-$ ,
- 10 g)  $-(C=O)O-$ ,
- h)  $-NR^8-$ ,
- i)  $-C(O)N(R^8)-$ ,
- j)  $-N(R^8)C(O)-$ ,
- k)  $-NHC(O)NH-$ ,
- 15 l)  $-S(O)_q-$ ,
- m)  $-S(O)_qNH-$ , and
- n)  $-NHS(O)_q-$ ;

$A^4$  is selected from a bond,  $C(O)$ ,  $C=CH_2$ , or spiro  $C_3-C_6$  cycloalkyl;

W is a heterocycle,

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- 25 b) heterocycle, and
- c) a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

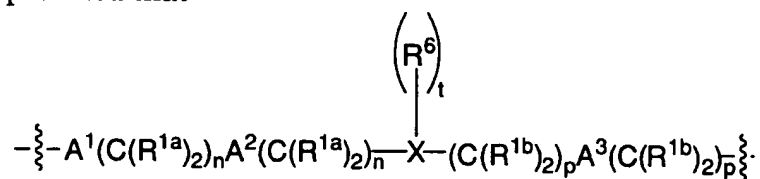
30 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2;

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

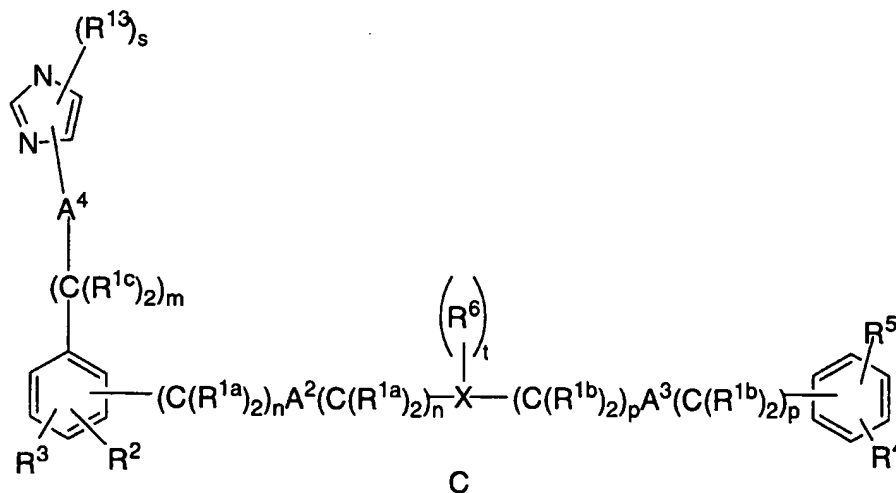
provided that



is not a bond;

5 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula C:



wherein:

10 R1a, R1b and R1c are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C1-C6 alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 15 c) C1-C6 alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C3-C10 cycloalkyl, C2-C6 alkenyl, C2-C6 alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- 5 c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 10 h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and
- i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,
- 15 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,
- unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,
- C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,
- NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,
- C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- 25 d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R<sup>8</sup>O-,
- 30 i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,
- k) CF<sub>3</sub>
- l) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O)-, and

m)  $R^8 (O=C)O-$ ;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
5 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

$R^9$  is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, benzyl and  
10 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

$R^{13}$  is independently selected from

H, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted  
or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
15  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OC(O)(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})$ ,  $-(C_1-C_6$   
alkyl) $N(R^8)_2$ , and  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})NHC(O)(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})R^8$ ;

$A^2$  is selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b)  $-HC=CH-$ ,
- 20 c)  $-C\equiv C-$ ,
- d)  $-O-$ ,
- e)  $-(C=O)-$ ,
- f)  $-O(C=O)-$ ,
- g)  $-(C=O)O-$ ,
- 25 h)  $-NR^8-$ ,
- i)  $-C(O)N(R^8)-$ ,
- j)  $-N(R^8)C(O)-$ ,
- k)  $-NHC(O)NH-$ ,
- l)  $-S(O)_q-$ ,
- 30 m)  $-S(O)_qNH-$ , and
- n)  $-NHS(O)_q-$ ;

$A^3$  is selected from:

- a) a bond,

- b) -O-,  
 c) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
 d) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-,  
 e) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
 5 f) -(C=O)-,  
 g) -(C=O)O-,  
 h) -O(C=O)-,  
 i) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
 j) -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-, and  
 10 k) -NHC(O)NH-;

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

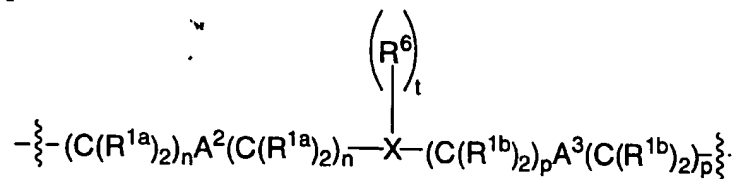
X is selected from:

- 15 a) aryl,  
 b) heterocycle, and  
 c) a bond;

- m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 20 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 q is 0, 1 or 2;  
 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and  
 t is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

25

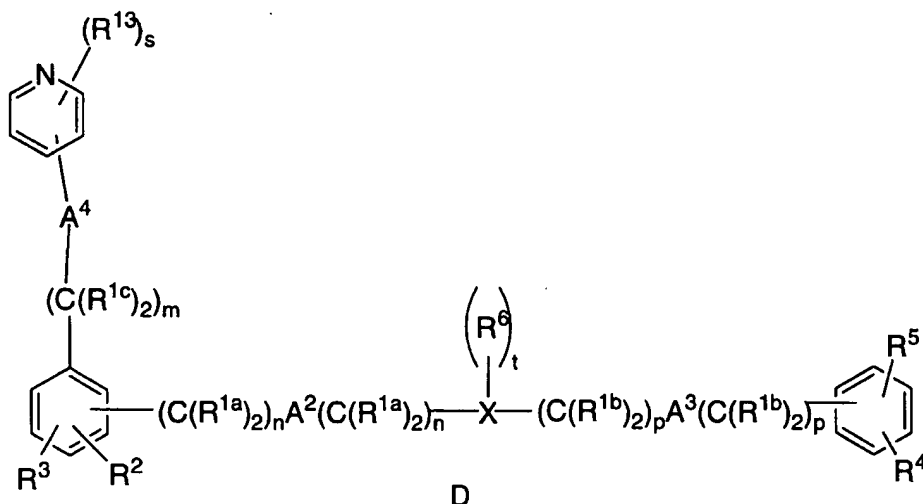
provided that



is not a bond;

- 30 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

6. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula D:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5       a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10      c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;
- 15      R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:
  - a) hydrogen,
  - b) CN,
  - c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
  - d) halogen,
  - 20    e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
  - g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted

- h)  $R^9S(O)_q$ , and  
 i)  $OR^8$ ;

$R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently selected from:

- 5 H, CN,  $NO_2$ , halogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 $N_3$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q$ ,  $HC\equiv C$ -, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  $CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O$ -,  $CF_3CH_2O$ -,  
 $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $OR^8$ ,  $N(R^8)_2$ ,  $-C(O)R^8$ ,  $-O(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 $-NHC(O)R^8$ , aralkyl, heteroaralkyl,  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})OR^8$ ,  
 10  $-(C_1-C_6 \text{ alkyl})C(O)R^8$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^8$  and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

$R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,  
 b) CN,  
 15 c)  $NO_2$ ,  
 d) halogen,  
 e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 g)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
 20 h)  $R^8O$ -,  
 i)  $N_3$ ,  
 j)  $R^9S(O)_q$ -,  
 k)  $CF_3$   
 l)  $R^8O(C=O)$ -, and  
 25 m)  $R^8(O=C)O$ -;

$R^8$  is independently selected from

- hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  
 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;  
 30

$R^9$  is independently selected from

- H, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;



R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from

- 5 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

A<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 10 a) a bond,  
b) -HC=CH-,  
c) -C≡C-,  
d) -O-,  
e) -(C=O)-,  
f) -O(C=O)-,  
15 g) -(C=O)O-,  
h) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
i) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
j) -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-,  
k) -NHC(O)NH-,  
20 l) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
m) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-, and  
n) -NHS(O)<sub>q</sub>-;

A<sup>3</sup> is selected from:

- 25 a) a bond,  
b) -O-,  
c) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>-,  
d) -S(O)<sub>q</sub>NH-,  
e) -NR<sup>8</sup>-,  
30 f) -(C=O)-,  
g) -(C=O)O-,  
h) -O(C=O)-,  
i) -C(O)N(R<sup>8</sup>)-,  
j) -N(R<sup>8</sup>)C(O)-, and  
35 k) -NHC(O)NH-;

A<sup>4</sup> is selected from a bond, C(O), C=CH<sub>2</sub>, or spiro C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl;

X is selected from:

- 5           a)     aryl,  
            b)     heterocycle, and  
            c)     a bond;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10          n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

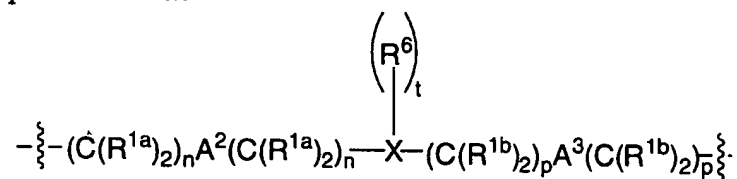
q is 0, 1 or 2; and

s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

t is 0, 1, 2, or 3;

15

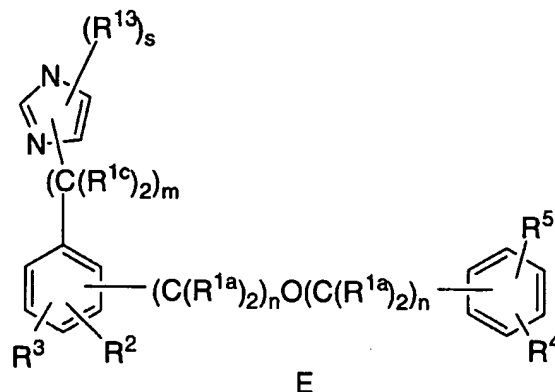
provided that



is not a bond;

20   or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

7.     The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula E:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and
- i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

25 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 5 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,

- (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$  ;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

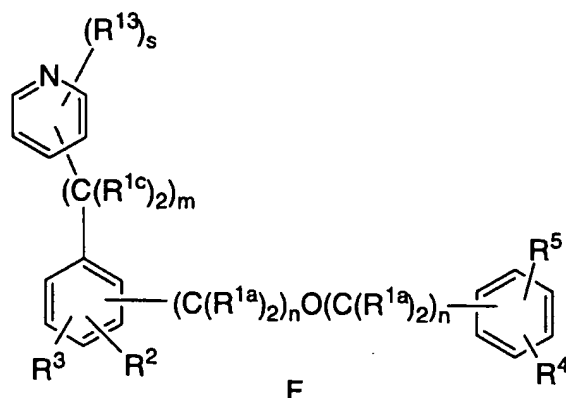
R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
 20 alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
 q is 0, 1 or 2; and  
 25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

8. The compound of Claim 1, illustrated by formula F:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 5 b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)O-, N<sub>3</sub>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub> or -OC(O)O-heteroaralkyl;
- 10 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- 15 a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- 20 f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted
- h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, and
- i) OR<sup>8</sup>;

25 R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

H, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, halogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 N<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>, HC≡C-, unsubstituted or substituted aryl,  
 unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle, CF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>O-, CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,  
 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, OR<sup>8</sup>, N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, -C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,  
 5 -NHC(O)R<sup>8</sup>, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{---C=C---R}^8 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{OH} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$

-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)C(O)R<sup>8</sup>, -CH=CH-R<sup>8</sup> and

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from  
 hydrogen, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,  
 10 cycloalkyl, benzyl and unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and  
 unsubstituted or substituted aryl;

15 R<sup>13</sup> is independently selected from  
 H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted  
 or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle,  
 -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OR<sup>8</sup>, -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)OC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
 20 alkyl)N(R<sup>8</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, and -(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)NHC(O)(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl)R<sup>8</sup>;

m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

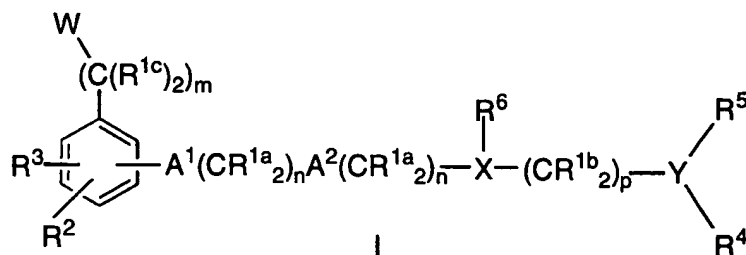
n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

q is 0, 1 or 2; and

25 s is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

9. A compound of formula I:



wherein:

R<sup>1a</sup>, R<sup>1b</sup> and R<sup>1c</sup> are independently selected from:

- 5        a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl; C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, or N<sub>3</sub>;
- 10       c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

15    R<sup>2</sup> is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- 20       e) aryl,
- f) heteroaryl,
- g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,
- h) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy,
- i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- 25       j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- k) R<sup>8</sup>C=C, and
- l) R<sup>8</sup>C≡C;

R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) H,
- b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- 5 e) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl,
- f) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy,
- g) N<sub>3</sub>,
- h) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- i) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,
- 10 j) -C≡CH,
- k) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- l) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted,
- m) CF<sub>3</sub>O-,
- n) CF<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-,
- 15 o) C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, and
- p) CF<sub>3</sub>;

R<sup>6</sup> is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 20 b) CN,
- c) NO<sub>2</sub>,
- d) halogen,
- e) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- f) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 25 g) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- h) R<sup>8</sup>O,
- i) N<sub>3</sub>,
- j) R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- k) -HC=CH<sub>2</sub>,
- 30 l) -C≡CH,
- m) CF<sub>3</sub>
- n) R<sup>8</sup>O(C=O), and
- o) R<sup>8</sup> (O=C)O;



R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

5

A<sup>1</sup> and A<sup>2</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) a bond,
- b) -HC=CH-,
- c) -C≡C-,
- 10 d) O,
- e) S(O)<sub>q</sub>,
- f) O(C=O),
- g) (O=C), and
- h) (C=O)O;

15

W is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- 20 c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

20

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- c) cycloalkyl,
- 25 d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

25

Y is selected from:

- a) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,
- 30 b) heterocycle, unsubstituted or substituted, and
- c) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted;

30

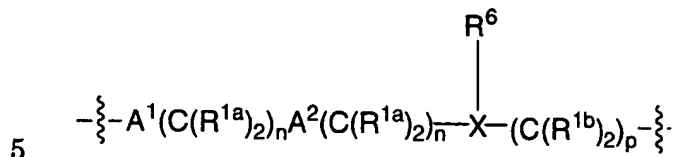
m is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

n is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;

p is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and

q is 0, 1 or 2;

provided that

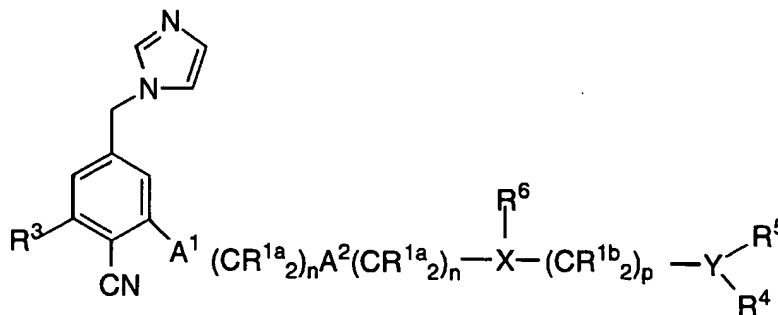


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

10

10. The compound of Claim 9, illustrated by formula Ia:



Ia

wherein:

15

R<sup>1a</sup> is selected from: hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>1b</sup> is independently selected from:

- 20
- a) hydrogen,
  - b) aryl, heterocycle, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, R<sup>8</sup>O- or C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl,
  - c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocycle, cycloalkyl, alkenyl, or R<sup>8</sup>O-;

$R^3$  and  $R^4$  are independently selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br,  $N_3$ , CN,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

5  $R^5$  is selected from:

- a) hydrogen, and
- b)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl substituted with hydrogen or a group selected from unsubstituted or substituted aryl, unsubstituted or substituted heterocyclic, unsubstituted or substituted  $C_3$ - $C_{10}$  cycloalkyl,  $CF_3$ ,  $NO_2$ ,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^9S(O)_q-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ ,  $R^8OC(O)-$ ,  $N_3$ , and CN;

$R^6$  is independently selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- 15 b)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  perfluoroalkyl, F, Cl, CN,  $NO_2$ , and
- c)  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl substituted by  $C_1$ - $C_6$  perfluoroalkyl,  $R^8O-$ ,  $R^8C(O)-$ , or  $R^8OC(O)-$ ;

20  $R^8$  is independently selected from hydrogen,  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

$R^9$  is independently selected from  $C_1$ - $C_6$  alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25  $A^1$  and  $A^2$  are independently selected from: a bond,  $-HC=CH-$ ,  $-C\equiv C-$ , O,  $S(O)_q$ ,  $O(C=O)$ , and  $(O=C)O$ ;

X is selected from:

- a) aryl,
- b) heteroaryl,
- 30 c) cycloalkyl,
- d) heterocycle, and
- e) a bond;

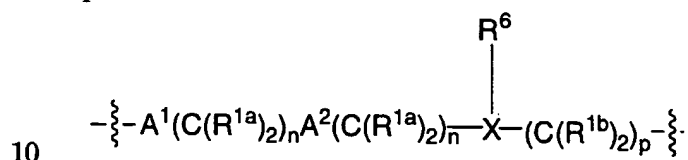
Y is selected from:

- 35 a) aryl,

- b) substituted aryl,
- c) heterocycle, and
- d) substituted heterocycle;

- 5    n is            0, 1, 2, 3 or 4;  
      p is            0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and  
      q is            0, 1, or 2;

provided that

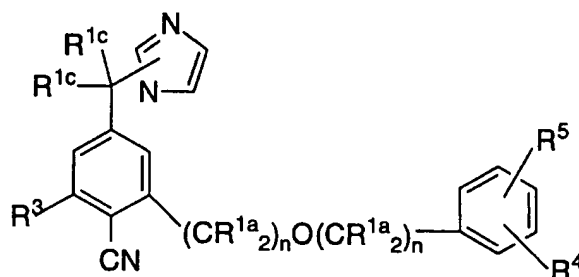


is not a bond;

or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15

11. The compound of Claim 9, illustrated by formula Ib:



Ib

wherein:

- 20    R1a is selected from:

- a) hydrogen,
- b) unsubstituted or substituted aryl; unsubstituted or substituted heterocycle; unsubstituted or substituted

- heteroaryl; C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, or N<sub>3</sub>;
- 5 c) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted by aryl, heterocyclic, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, R<sup>8</sup>O-, R<sup>9</sup>S(O)<sub>q</sub>-, CN, R<sup>8</sup>C(O)-, R<sup>8</sup>OC(O)-, N<sub>3</sub>, or -R<sup>8</sup>C(O)O-;

10 R<sup>1c</sup> is independently selected from: H, unsubstituted or substituted C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, unsubstituted or substituted aryl, and unsubstituted or substituted heteroaryl;

R<sup>3</sup> is selected from hydrogen, F, Cl, Br, N<sub>3</sub>, CN, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl and substituted or unsubstituted heterocycle;

15 R<sup>4</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are independently selected from:

- a) H,  
b) halogen,  
c) aryl, unsubstituted or substituted,  
20 d) heteroaryl, unsubstituted or substituted, and  
e) C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

25 R<sup>9</sup> is independently selected from C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, benzyl and aryl;

n is independently selected from: 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; and  
q is 0, 1 or 2;

30 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

12. A compound which inhibits a prenyl-protein transferase, selected from the group consisting of:

- 3-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 3-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethylbenzonitrile
- 5 3-(biphenyl-3-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 1-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-4-(3-chlorophenyl)-2(S)-[2-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)ethyl]piperazine
- 15 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(2-chlorophenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(phenyl-2-ethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichlorobenzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(benzyloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-2-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(phenyl-4-butoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(phenyl-3-propoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(1,2,4-triazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphenyl-4-yl-2-ethoxy)-4-benzimidazol-1-yl)methyl-benzonitrile
- 10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-cyanophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-bromophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(biphen-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(biphen-4-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(3-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-acetylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-trifluoromethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(4-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(3,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(1-naphthoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-fluorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(3-t-butylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-[3-(N,N-diethylamino)phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-n-propylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,3-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(4-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(5-chloro-2-methylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile



2-(2-chloro-4,5-dimethylphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

5 2-(5-hydroxymethyl-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-  
benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

10 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-methylphenylamino)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

2-(2-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

15 1-(5-chloro-2-methoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-  
phenoxy)-phenyl]-urea

20 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-phenyl)-3-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-  
phenyl]-urea

2-(3-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(4-benzyloxy-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

25 2-(2-benzyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

2-(3-ethynyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

30 2-(4-acetyl-3-methyl-phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indazol-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile

35 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-  
benzonitrile

- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(8-oxo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-1-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-7-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(3-oxo-indan-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(1*H*-indol-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 10 2-[3-(2-hydroxy-ethoxy)-phenoxy]-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(4-imidazol-1-yl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 4'-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-biphenyl-4-carbonitrile
- 15 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-acetamide
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(9-oxo-9*H*-fluoren-4-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 20 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
- 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
- 3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclopropylmethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide
- 25 2-(5-chloro-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzenesulfonamide
- 30 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(indan-5-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 3-(9*H*-carbazol-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35

- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-methoxy-4-propenyl-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(4-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3,5-dichlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chlorophenoxy)-5-(4-phenyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 20 2-(biphen-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(phenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(2-chloro-4-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-ylsulfanyl)-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfinyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 35 2-(2,4-dichloro-benzenesulfonyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 2-(2-methyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dimethyl-pyridin-3-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 5 2-(4-chloro-2-methoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(5-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 10 2-(2-chlorophenoxy)-4-(4-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chloro-5-trifluoromethyl-pyridin-2-yloxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile
- 15 2-(2,4-dichlorophenoxy)-4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-benzamide
- 20 2-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-*N*-phenyl-acetamide
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-quinolin-6-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 25 *N*-[3-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-phenyl]-2-phenyl-acetamide
- 5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-*N*-cyclohexyl-nicotinamide
- 30 *N*-(3-chloro-phenyl)-5-(2-cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-nicotinamide
- 2-(2,3-dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-(2,4-dimethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 35

- 4-(2-methyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 4-(1-imidazol-1-yl-1-methyl-ethyl)-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile
- 5 1-[4-iodo-3-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzyl]-1*H*-imidazole
- acetic acid 3-[3-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-cyano-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl ester
- 10 2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-4-(5-hydroxymethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-benzonitrile
- 4-(5-aminomethyl-imidazol-1-ylmethyl)-2-(2-chloro-phenoxy)-benzonitrile
- 15 N-{3-[4-cyano-3-(2,3-dimethoxy-phenoxy)-benzyl]-3*H*-imidazol-4-ylmethyl}-2-cyclohexyl-acetamide
- 20 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-imidazol-1-yl-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[1-(4-chloro-phenyl)-2-hydroxy-1-imidazol-1-yl-ethyl]-benzonitrile
- 25 2-(3-chloro-phenoxy)-4-[(4-chloro-phenyl)-hydroxy-(3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-benzonitrile
- 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile
- 30 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenoxy)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile
- 35 4-[hydroxy-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[amino-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-methyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

5 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile

4-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile hydrochloride

10

3-[2-cyano-5-[1-amino-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy]-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

15 3-[2-cyano-5-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy]-*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenyl-benzamide

4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenylamino-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

20 4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-2-(3-phenoxy-phenoxy)-benzonitrile

2-(3-benzoyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

25

2-(3-*tert*-butyl-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

30 2-(3-diethylamino-phenoxy)-4-[1-hydroxy-1-(3-methyl-3*H*-imidazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-benzonitrile

2-(5-chloro-2-oxo-2*H*-[1,2']bipyridinyl-5'-ylmethoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

**4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[2-(2-oxo-2*H*-pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile**

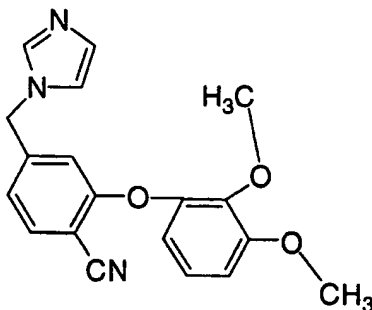
**4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[3-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile**

5

**4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-[4-(2-oxo-2*H*- pyridin-1-yl)-phenoxy]-benzonitrile**

10 or the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

13. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:

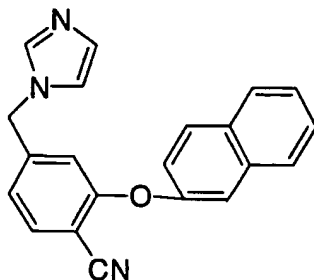


**2-(2,3-Dimethoxyphenoxy)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile**

15

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

**14. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:**

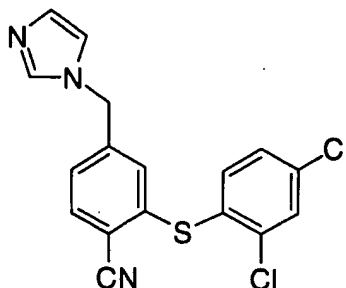


20

**4-Imidazol-1-ylmethyl-2-(naphthalen-2-yloxy)-benzonitrile**

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

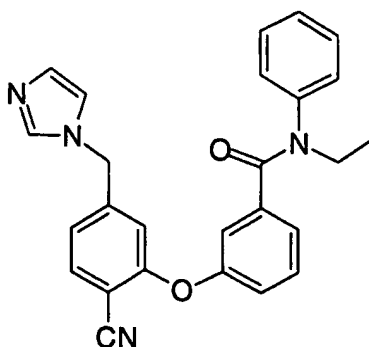
- 5                    15.    The compound according to Claim 12 which is:



2-(2,4-Dichlorophenylsulfanyl)-4-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-benzonitrile

- 10                    or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16.    The compound according to Claim 12 which is:

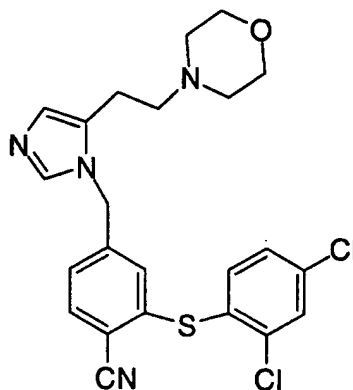


- 15                    3-(2-Cyano-5-imidazol-1-ylmethyl-phenoxy)-N-ethyl-N-phenyl-benzamide

- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.  
20



17. The compound according to Claim 12 which is:



- 2-(2,4-dichloro-phenylsulfanyl)-4-[5-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethyl)-imidazol-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

18. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

19. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 5.

20. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutical carrier, and dispersed therein, a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of Claim 12.

21. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

22. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 19.

5 23. A method for inhibiting a prenyl-protein transferase which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 20.

10 24. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

15 25. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 19.

20 26. A method for treating cancer which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 20.

25 27. A method for treating neurofibromen benign proliferative disorder which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

28. A method for treating blindness related to retinal vascularization which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

30 29. A method for treating infections from hepatitis delta and related viruses which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

30. A method for preventing restenosis which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

5 31. A method for treating polycystic kidney disease which comprises administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a composition of Claim 18.

10 32. A pharmaceutical composition made by combining the compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 33. A process for making a pharmaceutical composition comprising combining a compound of Claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> deSolms, S. Jane  
Hutchinson, John H.  
Shaw, Anthony W.  
Graham, Samuel L.  
Ciccarone, Terrence M.  
Merck & Co., Inc.

<120> INHIBITORS OF PRENYL-PROTEIN TRANSFERASE

<130> 19928Y

<150> 60/062,660

<151> 1997-10-08

<160> 26

<170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

<210> 1

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homosapien

<400> 1

Cys Val Ile Met

1

<210> 2

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homosapien

<400> 2

Cys Val Leu Leu

1

<210> 3

<211> 4

<212> PRT

<213> Homosapien

<400> 3

Cys Val Val Met

1

<210> 4

<211> 4

<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 4  
Cys Ile Ile Met  
1

<210> 5  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 5  
Cys Leu Leu Leu  
1

<210> 6  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 6  
Cys Gln Leu Leu  
1

<210> 7  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 7  
Cys Ser Ile Met  
1

<210> 8  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 8  
Cys Ala Ile Met  
1

<210> 9  
<211> 4  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homosapien

<400> 9  
Cys Lys Val Leu  
1

<210> 10  
 <211> 4  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homosapien

<400> 10  
 Cys Leu Ile Met  
 1

<210> 11  
 <211> 4  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homosapien

<400> 11  
 Cys Val Leu Ser  
 1

<210> 12  
 <211> 4  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homosapien

<400> 12  
 Cys Ala Ile Leu  
 1

<210> 13  
 <211> 15  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homosapien

<400> 13  
 Gly Lys Lys Lys Lys Lys Lys Ser Lys Thr Lys Cys Val Ile Met  
 1 5 10 15

<210> 14  
 <211> 86  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> completely synthesized

<400> 14  
 tctcctcgag gccaccatgg ggagtagcaa gagcaagcct aaggacccca gccagcgccg 60  
 gatgacagaa tacaagcttg tgggtgg 86

<210> 15  
 <211> 33  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 15  
cacatctaga tcaggacagc acagacttgc agc 33

<210> 16  
<211> 41  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 16  
tctcctcgag gccaccatga cagaatacaa gcttgtggtg g 41

<210> 17  
<211> 38  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 17  
cactctagac tgggtgtcaga gcagcacaca cttgcagc 38

<210> 18  
<211> 38  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 18  
gagagaattc gccaccatga cggaatataa gctgggtg 38

<210> 19  
<211> 33  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 19  
gagagtcgac gcgtcaggag agcacacact tgc 33

<210> 20

<211> 22  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 20  
ccgccgcct ggaggagtac ag 22

<210> 21  
<211> 38  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 21  
gagagaattc gccaccatga ctgagtacaa actggtgg 38

<210> 22  
<211> 32  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 22  
gagagtcgac ttgttacatc accacacatg gc 32

<210> 23  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 23  
gttgagcag ttggtgttgg g 21

<210> 24  
<211> 38  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> completely synthesized

<400> 24



gagaggtacc gccaccatga ctgaatataa acttgtgg

38

<210> 25

<211> 36

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> completely synthesized

<400> 25

ctctgtcgac gtatttacat aattacacac ttgtgc

36

<210> 26

<211> 24

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> completely synthesized

<400> 26

gtagttggag ctgttggcgt aggc

24

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/21063

| <b>A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b><br>IPC(6) : Please See Extra Sheet.<br>US CL : 514/235.8, 341, 399; 544/139; 546/275.1; 548/336.1<br>According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <b>B. FIELDS SEARCHED</b><br>Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)<br>U.S. : 548/336.1; 546/275.1; 544/139; 514/235.8, 341, 399<br>Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched<br>Please See Extra Sheet.<br>Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)   |  |  |
| <b>C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b>   |  |  |
| Category*   | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No.  |
| A   | US 4,690,942 A (FRICK et al.) 01 September 1987, see entire document.              | 1-33   |
| A   | US 5,559,141 A (KARJALAINEN et al.) 24 September 1996, see entire document.        | 1-33   |
| X,P   | US 5,780,492 A (DINSMORE et al.) 14 July 1998. see entire document.                | 1-6, 18, 19, 21, 22, 24, 25, 27-33                                       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. <input type="checkbox"/> See patent family annex.   |  |  |
| * Special categories of cited documents:<br>*A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance<br>*E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date<br>*L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)<br>*O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means<br>*P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed<br>*T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention<br>*X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone<br>*Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art<br>*Z* document member of the same patent family |  |  |
| Date of the actual completion of the international search<br>08 DECEMBER 1998   |  | Date of mailing of the international search report<br>26 JAN 1999        |
| Name and mailing address of the ISA/US<br>Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks<br>Box PCT<br>Washington, D.C. 20231<br>Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230   |  | Authorized officer<br>FLOYD D. HIGEL aco<br>Telephone No. (703) 303-1235 |

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.  
PCT/US98/21063

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER:**

IPC (6): A61K 31/535, 31/44, 31/415; C01D 413/00, 401/00, 417/00, 419/00, 233/66.

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Documentation other than minimum documentation that are included in the fields searched:

Chemical Abstracts

Index Chemicus

Current Abstracts of Chemistry

**BEST AVAILABLE COPY**